

# PLUTO

v. 4.1 (October 2014)

---

## User's Guide

(<http://plutocode.ph.unito.it>)

**Developer:** A. Mignone<sup>1,2</sup> (mignone@ph.unito.it)

**Contributors:** C. Zanni<sup>2</sup> (AMR) (zanni@oato.inaf.it)

B. Vaidya<sup>1</sup> (EoS, Cooling, pyPLUTO) (bhargav.vaidya@unito.it)

T. Matsakos<sup>4</sup> (Resistivity, Thermal Conduction, STS)

G. Muscianisi<sup>3</sup> (Parallelization, I/O)

P. Tzeferacos<sup>5</sup> (Viscosity, MHD, STS, Finite-Difference)

O. Tesileanu<sup>6</sup> (Cooling)

<sup>1</sup> Dipartimento di Fisica, Turin University, Via P. Giuria 1 - 10125 Torino (TO), Italy

<sup>2</sup> INAF Osservatorio Astronomico di Torino, Via Osservatorio, 20 10025 Pino Torinese (TO), Italy

<sup>3</sup> Consorzio Interuniversitario CINECA, via Magnanelli, 6/3, 40033 Casalecchio di Reno (Bologna), Italy

<sup>4</sup> Dept. of Astronomy & Astrophysics, University of Chicago, 5640 S. Ellis Ave Chicago, IL 60637, USA

<sup>5</sup> FLASH Center, University of Chicago, USA

<sup>6</sup> Department of Physics, University of Bucharest, Str. Atomistilor nr. 405, RO-077125 Magurele, Ilfov, Romania

# Terms & Conditions of Use

**PLUTO** is distributed freely under the GNU general public license. Code's development and support requires a great deal of work and for this reason we expect **PLUTO** to be referenced and acknowledged by authors who use it for their publications. Co-authorship may be solicited for those publications demanding considerable additional support and/or changes to the code.

# Contents

<b>0</b>	<b>Quick Start</b>	<b>5</b>
0.1	Downloading and unpacking <b>PLUTO</b>	5
0.2	Running a simple shock-tube problem	5
0.3	Running the Orszag-Tang MHD vortex test	6
0.4	Setting up your own test problem	7
0.5	Supplied test problems	8
0.6	Migrating from <b>PLUTO</b> 3 to <b>PLUTO</b> 4	9
0.7	Migrating from <b>PLUTO</b> 4.0 to <b>PLUTO</b> 4.1	11
<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction</b>	<b>12</b>
1.1	System Requirements	12
1.2	Directory Structure	13
1.3	Configuring <b>PLUTO</b>	14
1.4	Compiling & Running the Code	14
1.4.1	Command line options	15
1.5	Modifying the Distribution Source Files	16
<b>2</b>	<b>Problem Setup</b>	<b>17</b>
2.1	STEP # 1: header file definitions.h	17
2.1.1	<u>PHYSICS</u>	17
2.1.2	<u>DIMENSIONS &amp; COMPONENTS</u>	17
2.1.3	<u>GEOMETRY</u>	18
2.1.4	<u>BODY_FORCE</u>	18
2.1.5	<u>COOLING</u>	18
2.1.6	<u>INTERPOLATION</u>	19
2.1.7	<u>TIME_EVOLUTION</u>	19
2.1.8	<u>DIMENSIONAL_SPLITTING</u>	20
2.1.9	<u>NTRACER</u>	22
2.1.10	<u>USER_DEF_PARAMETERS</u>	22
2.1.11	<u>USER_DEF_CONSTANTS</u>	23
2.1.12	Additional Switches	24
2.2	STEP # 2: makefile creation	26
2.2.1	MPI Library (Parallel) Support	26
2.2.2	HDF5 Library Support	27
2.2.3	PNG Library Support	27
2.2.4	Including Additional Files: local.make	28
2.3	STEP # 3: The initialization file pluto.ini	29
2.3.1	The <i>[Grid]</i> block	30
2.3.2	The <i>[Chombo Refinement]</i> Block	31
2.3.3	The <i>[Time]</i> Block	32
2.3.4	The <i>[Solver]</i> Block	32
2.3.5	The <i>[Boundary]</i> Block	33
2.3.6	The <i>[Static Grid Output]</i> Block	34

2.3.7	The [ <i>Chombo HDF5 output</i> ] Block . . . . .	35
2.3.8	The [ <i>Parameters</i> ] Block . . . . .	35
2.4	STEP # 4: Problem Configuration: <i>init.c</i> . . . . .	36
2.4.1	Initial Conditions: the <b>Init()</b> function . . . . .	36
2.4.2	User-defined Boundary Conditions . . . . .	39
2.4.3	Body Forces . . . . .	43
2.4.4	The <b>Analysis()</b> function . . . . .	45
<b>3</b>	<b>Basic Physics Modules</b> . . . . .	<b>47</b>
3.1	The HD Module . . . . .	47
3.1.1	Equations . . . . .	47
3.1.2	Available Options . . . . .	48
3.2	The MHD Module . . . . .	50
3.2.1	Equations . . . . .	50
3.2.2	Available Options . . . . .	51
3.2.3	Assigning Magnetic Field Components . . . . .	52
3.2.4	Controlling the $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{B} = 0$ Condition . . . . .	53
3.2.5	Background Field Splitting . . . . .	56
3.3	The RHD Module . . . . .	58
3.3.1	Equations . . . . .	58
3.3.2	Available options . . . . .	59
3.4	The RMHD Module . . . . .	60
3.4.1	Equations . . . . .	60
3.4.2	Available Options . . . . .	60
<b>4</b>	<b>Equation of State</b> . . . . .	<b>61</b>
4.1	The <i>ISOTHERMAL</i> Equation of State . . . . .	61
4.2	The <i>IDEAL</i> Equation of State . . . . .	61
4.3	The <i>PVTE_LAW</i> Equation of State . . . . .	62
4.3.1	Example: EOS for a Partially Ionized Hydrogen Gas in LTE . . . . .	63
4.3.2	Analytic vs. tabulated approach . . . . .	64
4.4	The <i>TAUB</i> Equation of state . . . . .	65
<b>5</b>	<b>Dissipative Effects</b> . . . . .	<b>66</b>
5.1	Viscosity . . . . .	67
5.2	Resistivity . . . . .	68
5.3	Thermal Conduction . . . . .	69
5.3.1	Dimensions . . . . .	69
5.4	Numerical Integration of Diffusion Terms . . . . .	71
5.4.1	Explicit Time Stepping . . . . .	71
5.4.2	Super-Time-Stepping (STS) . . . . .	71
<b>6</b>	<b>Optically Thin Cooling</b> . . . . .	<b>73</b>
6.1	Units and Dimensions . . . . .	73
6.2	Power Law Cooling . . . . .	76
6.3	Tabulated Cooling . . . . .	77
6.4	Simplified Non-Equilibrium Cooling: <i>SNEq</i> . . . . .	77
6.5	Molecular Hydrogen Non-Equilibrium Cooling: <i>H2_COOL</i> . . . . .	78
6.6	Multi-Ion Non-Equilibrium Cooling: <i>MINEq</i> . . . . .	79
<b>7</b>	<b>Additional Modules</b> . . . . .	<b>81</b>
7.1	The ShearingBox Module . . . . .	81
7.1.1	Using the module . . . . .	81
7.2	The FARGO Module . . . . .	83
7.2.1	Using the Module . . . . .	83
7.2.2	A Note on Parallelization . . . . .	84

7.3	High-order Finite Difference Schemes . . . . .	85
7.3.1	WENO schemes . . . . .	85
7.3.2	LimO3 & MP5 . . . . .	86
<b>8</b>	<b>Output and Visualization</b> . . . . .	<b>87</b>
8.1	Output Data Formats . . . . .	87
8.1.1	Binary Output: dbl or flt data formats . . . . .	88
8.1.2	HDF5 Output: dbl.h5 or flt.h5 data formats . . . . .	88
8.1.3	VTK Output: vtk data format . . . . .	89
8.1.4	ASCII Output: tab Data format . . . . .	89
8.1.5	Graphic Output: ppm and png data formats . . . . .	89
8.1.6	The grid.out output file . . . . .	90
8.2	Customizing your output . . . . .	91
8.2.1	Changing Attributes . . . . .	91
8.3	Visualization . . . . .	93
8.3.1	Visualization with IDL . . . . .	93
8.3.2	Visualization with VisIt or ParaView . . . . .	95
8.3.3	Visualization with pyPLUTO . . . . .	96
8.3.4	Visualization with Gnuplot . . . . .	98
8.3.5	Visualization with Mathematica . . . . .	100
<b>9</b>	<b>Adaptive Mesh Refinement (AMR)</b> . . . . .	<b>101</b>
9.1	Installation . . . . .	101
9.1.1	Installing HDF5 . . . . .	102
9.1.2	Installing and Configuring Chombo . . . . .	102
9.2	Configuring and running <b>PLUTO</b> -Chombo . . . . .	103
9.2.1	Running <b>PLUTO</b> -Chombo . . . . .	104
9.3	Header File definitions.h . . . . .	104
9.4	The pluto.ini initialization file . . . . .	105
9.4.1	The <i>[Chombo Refinement]</i> Block . . . . .	105
9.4.2	The <i>[Chombo HDF5 output]</i> Block . . . . .	106
9.5	Controlling Refinement . . . . .	106
9.6	Reading and Visualizing HDF5 Files . . . . .	107
9.6.1	Visualization with IDL . . . . .	107
9.6.2	Visualization with VisIt . . . . .	109
9.6.3	Visualization with pyPLUTO . . . . .	110
<b>A</b>	<b>Equations in Different Geometries</b> . . . . .	<b>111</b>
A.1	MHD Equations . . . . .	111
A.1.1	Cartesian Coordinates . . . . .	111
A.1.2	Polar Coordinates . . . . .	112
A.1.3	Spherical Coordinates . . . . .	113
A.2	(Special) Relativistic MHD Equations . . . . .	114
A.2.1	Cartesian Coordinates . . . . .	114
A.2.2	Polar Coordinates . . . . .	114
A.2.3	Spherical Coordinates . . . . .	115
<b>B</b>	<b>Predefined Constants and Macros</b> . . . . .	<b>116</b>
B.1	Predefined Physical Constants . . . . .	116
B.2	Predefined Function-Like Macros . . . . .	116
B.3	Fine Tuning Constants . . . . .	117

---

# 0. Quick Start

---

## 0.1 Downloading and unpacking PLUTO

**PLUTO** can be downloaded from <http://plutocode.ph.unito.it>. Once downloaded, extract all the files from the archive:

```
~> gunzip pluto-xx.tar.gz
~> tar xvf pluto-xx.tar
```

this will create the folder `PLUTO/` in your home directory. At this point, we advise to set the environment variable `PLUTO_DIR` to point to your code directory. Depending on your shell (e.g. `tcsh` or `bash`) use either one of

```
~> setenv PLUTO_DIR /home/user/PLUTO # if you're using the tcsh shell, or
~> export PLUTO_DIR=/home/user/PLUTO # if you're using the bash shell.
```

## 0.2 Running a simple shock-tube problem

**PLUTO** can be quickly configured to run one of the several test problems provided with the distribution. Assuming that your system satisfies all the requirements described in the next chapter (i.e. C compiler, Python, etc..) you can quickly setup **PLUTO** in the following way:

- change directory to any of the test problems under `PLUTO/Test.Problems`, e.g.

```
~> cd $PLUTO_DIR/Test_Problem/HD/Sod
```

- run the Python script using

```
~/PLUTO/Test_Prob/HD/Sod> python $PLUTO_DIR/setup.py
```

and select “Setup problem” from the main menu, see Fig. 1.2. You can choose (by pressing Enter) or modify the default setting using the arrow keys.

- Once you return to the main menu, select “Change makefile”, choose a suitable makefile (e.g. `Linux-i686.gcc.defs`) and press enter.

All the information relevant to the specific problem should now be stored in the four files `init.c` (assigns initial condition and user-supplied boundary conditions), `pluto.ini` (sets the number of grid zones, Riemann solver, output frequency, etc.), `definitions.h` (specifies the geometry, number of dimensions, interpolation, time stepping scheme, and so forth) and the makefile.

- exit from the main menu (“Quit” or press ‘q’) and type

```
~/PLUTO/Test_Prob/HD/Sod> make
```

to compile the code.

- you can now run the code by typing

```
~/PLUTO/Test_Prob/HD/Sod> ./pluto
```

At this point, **PLUTO** reads the initialization file `pluto.ini` and starts integrating. The run should take a few seconds (or less) and the integration log should be dumped to screen.

Data can be displayed in a number of different ways. If you have, for example, Gnuplot (v 4.2 or higher) you can display the density output from the last written file using

```
gnuplot> plot "data.0001.db1" bin array=400:400:400 form="%double" ind 0
```

where `ind 0, 1, 2` may be used to select density, velocity or pressure. If you have IDL installed on your system, you can easily plot the density by<sup>1</sup>:

```
IDL> pload, 1
IDL> plot, x1, rho
```

The IDL procedure `pload` is provided along with the code distribution.

### 0.3 Running the Orszag-Tang MHD vortex test

- change directory to `PLUTO/Test.Problems/MHD/Orszag_Tang`,
- run the Python script:

```
~/PLUTO/Test_Problem/MHD/Orszag_Tang> python $PLUTO_DIR/setup.py
```

select “Setup problem” and choose the default setting by pressing enter;

- Once you return to the main menu, select “Change makefile” and choose a suitable makefile (e.g. `default.defs`) and press enter.
- exit from the main menu (“Quit” or press ‘q’). Edit `pluto.ini` and, under the `[Grid]` block, lower the resolution from 512 to 200 in both directions (**x1-grid** and **x2-grid**). Change **single\_file**, in the “db1” output under the `[Uniform Grid Output]` block, to **multiple\_files**.  
Finally, edit `definitions.h` and change `PRINT_TO_FILE` from `YES` to `NO`.

- compile the code:

```
~/PLUTO/Test_Problem/MHD/Orszag_Tang> make
```

- If compilation was successful, you can now run the code by typing

```
~/PLUTO/Test_Problem/MHD/Orszag_Tang> ./pluto
```

At this point, **PLUTO** reads the initialization file `pluto.ini` and starts integrating. The run should take a few minutes (depending on the machine you’re running on) and the integration log should be dumped to screen.

You can display data (e.g. density) with Gnuplot (v 4.2 or higher) from the last written file using

```
gnuplot> set pm3d map      # set map style drawing
gnuplot> set palette gray # set color to black and white
gnuplot> splot "data.0001.db1" bin array=200x200 format="%double"
```

If you have IDL installed, you can easily display pressure from the last written output files with

```
IDL> pload, 1
IDL> display, x1=x1, x2=x2, prs
```

Several other visualization options are described in more details in §8.3.

---

<sup>1</sup>You need to include `PLUTO/Tools/IDL` into your IDL search path, §8.3.1

## 0.4 Setting up your own test problem

As an illustrative example, we show how **PLUTO** can be configured to run a 2D Cartesian hydrodynamic blast wave from scratch. We assume that you have already followed the steps in §0.1.

- First, in your home or work directory, you need to create a folder which will contain the necessary files for the test. For instance,

```
~> mkdir Blastwave
~> cd Blastwave
```

- You can now start the setup process by invoking the Python script to set dimensions, geometry, numerical scheme and so on:

```
~/Blastwave> python $PLUTO_DIR/setup.py
```

and select “Setup problem” from the main menu.

Using the arrows keys make the following changes: set “DIMENSIONS” and “COMPONENTS” to 2, “USER\_DEF\_PARAMETERS” to 3 and leave the other fields as they are. User-defined parameters will be used later in the initial condition routine. Press enter to confirm the changes and proceed to the following screen menu. Since we don’t have to change anything here you can press enter once more.

- We now set the names of the 3 auxiliary parameters previously introduced. To do so, use the arrow keys to select each of them and explicitly write their names: P.IN, P.OUT and GAMMA and press enter to confirm.
- Finally, we complete the python session by setting the architecture for the makefile. In the makefile menu choose your system configuration (e.g. Linux.i686.defs for Linux). Press enter to confirm.

You are now done with the Python script and can exit by pressing either “q” or selecting quit. At this point you should find the following four files inside your Blastwave folder: definitions.h, init.c, makefile, pluto.ini, sysconf.out

Next, we need to edit the two files pluto.ini and init.c. The first one defines the computational domain and certain properties of the run (i.e. time of integration, first timestep etc). The second one sets the initial conditions for the blast wave problem: a circular region of high pressure in a lower pressure ambient.

Edit pluto.ini to make the following changes:

- The domain should span from -1 to 1 in both dimensions with 200 points in each direction.

```
X1-grid      1      -1.0      200      u      1.0
X2-grid      1      -1.0      200      u      1.0
```

- The simulation should stop when time reaches 0.04:

```
tstop                0.04
```

with the first timestep being

```
first_dt            1.e-6
```

Save the files every t=0.004, in double precision and in multiple\_files format.

```
dbl                0.004  -1  multiple_files
```

- At the end of the file, set the numerical values for the 3 parameters P.IN (the high pressure of a region yet to be specified), P.OUT (the ambient pressure) and GAMMA (polytropic index):



```
P_IN      8.e2
P_OUT     8.0
GAMMA     1.6666666666666667
```

Save and exit the editor.

Next, you need to edit `init.c`.

- Define inside the function **Init ()** the radius `r`, a floating point value which we will be used to set a circular region of high pressure.

```
double r;
```

- Set the global variable `g_gamma` (polytropic index) and the radius `r`. Define the initial ambient pressure (`P_OUT`) and put an IF statement to specify the high pressure region inside a circle of `r=0.3 (P_IN)`:

```
g_gamma = g_inputParam[GAMMA]; /* calls the auxiliary parameter GAMMA*/
r = x1*x1 + x2*x2;
r = sqrt(r);

v[RHO] = 1.0;          /* initial density array */
v[VX1] = 0.0;          /* initial Vx array */
v[VX2] = 0.0;          /* initial Vy array */
v[VX3] = 0.0;          /* initial Vz array */
v[PRS] = g_inputParam[P_OUT]; /* calls the auxiliary parameter P_OUT */

if (r <= 0.3) v[PRS] = g_inputParam[P_IN]; /* calls the input parameter P_IN */
```

Save and exit the editor. Compile the code and run **PLUTO** with a the following set of commands:

```
~/Blastwave> make
~/Blastwave> ./pluto
```

In order to visualize the results follow the instructions described in the two previous sections.

## 0.5 Supplied test problems

The official distribution of **PLUTO** comes with several examples and test problems that can be found under the `Test_Problems/` folder. Documentation is extracted from comments at the beginning of `init.c` sources files using the `Doxygen` documentation system and an on-line documentation browser can be found in `Doc/test_problems.html`. Test problem documentation is still on-going and more examples will be available in future releases.

## 0.6 Migrating from PLUTO 3 to PLUTO 4

Users familiar with **PLUTO** version 3 should provide a few modifications in order to upgrade to the current release. The most important changes are listed below.

- Naming convention has been largely revised in order to adhere to a more consistent and better organized programming style. This resolves the mixed-up confusion between function, global variable and macro names present in previous versions of **PLUTO**. In particular:

1. Function names have been changed from all capital letter style to upper CamelCase style, e.g., **FUNCTION\_NAME()** → **FunctionName()**. This affects the whole code and, in particular, also the functions contained inside `init.c`. For instance:

```
INIT() → Init()
ANALYSIS() → Analysis()
USERDEF_BOUNDARY() → UserDefBoundary()
```

The argument list inside the previous functions has also been changed, see §2.4 for details.

2. Macro names retain the capital letter style, e.g.,

```
dmin() → MIN()
dmax() → MAX()
dsign() → DSIGN()
Array_2D() → ARRAY_2D()
```

Besides, macro names giving the array index of a variable now use a three-letter word:

```
- DN → RHO
- PR → PRS
- VX → VX1
- ...
```

See Table 2.4 in §2.4.1. However we still keep the old two-letter notation (e.g. “DN” or “PR”) for backward compatibility.

3. Global variables have been renamed using lower camelCase style and are prefixed with “g\_”, see the header file `globals.h`. For instance:

```
gmm → g_gamma
aux → g_inputParam
C_ISO → g_isoSoundSpeed
...
```

The only exception is for integer global variables that are initialized once at the beginning of the computations (e.g. number of points `NX1_TOT . . . NX3_TOT`, starting and final indices `IBEG . . . KEND`, and so forth) and do not change anymore during the computation.

4. Variable names referring to the number of points and using the notation “X, Y, Z” have been replaced with the more general syntax “X1, X2, X3” whenever possible. Similarly, variables giving grid indices use the notation “I, J, K”:

```
(NX, NY, NZ) → (NX1, NX2, NX3);
(NX_TOT, NY_TOT, NZ_TOT) → (NX1_TOT, NX2_TOT, NX3_TOT);
(NX_PT, NY_PT, NZ_PT) → (g_i, g_j, g_k);
```

- **PLUTO 4.0** uses Doxygen as the standard documentation system which, from now on, is meant to replace the old Developer’s guide. The API reference guide, although not complete, can be found on the web or in the local distribution under `PLUTO/Doc/Doxygen/html/index.html`.
- The **BODY\_FORCE()** function has been replaced by two new functions, **BodyForceVector()** and **BodyForcePotential()** (see §2.4.3) included inside the file `init.c`.

- Limiters are no longer functions and can be specified in your `definitions.h` header by macro names with upper-case letter, e.g., `minmod_lim`  $\rightarrow$  `MINMOD_LIM`, etc...
- `ArrayLib` has been removed as a separate library and a more compact, largely debugged subset has been directly incorporated into the code, under the directory `Src/Parallel/`.
- The structure of the system-dependent configuration file used by the makefile is different, see §2.2.
- I/O has slightly been modified in the following ways:
  - variable names follow the same three-letter patterns used above;
  - the output grid file `grid.out` employs a different format, see §8.1.6.
- The command line switch `-restart` always requires the restart file number, `-restart n`.
- Assignment of initial condition from external files uses a different, more flexible approach, §2.4.1.1.
- Visualization routines written in the IDL programming language follows the same naming convention adopted by the code.
- **PLUTO** 4.0 requires Chombo 3.1 for Adaptive Mesh Refinement.

## 0.7 Migrating from PLUTO 4.0 to PLUTO 4.1

PLUTO 4.1 does not introduce major changes with respect to version 4.0 in the syntax of the basic functions defined in `init.c`. A few minor changes, however, have been introduced mainly for uniformity and efficiency reasons.

- The convention adopted for labelling ion variables in the cooling modules has been changed for uniformity reason and to avoid some confusion. Ion names now begin with an `x_` followed by the standard notation, e.g.

```
v[FNEUT] → v[X_HI];
```

```
v[SII] → v[X_SII];
```

```
...
```

and so on.

- Global grid indices are no longer pointers but integer variables, that is,

```
(*g_i) → g_i
```

```
(*g_j) → g_j
```

```
(*g_k) → g_k
```

- Diffusion coefficient name of functions:

- o Resistivity: **`eta_visc_func()`** in `eta_visc.c` has been changed to **`Visc_nu()`** in `visc.nu.c`, see §5.1.

- o Viscosity: **`ETA_Func()`** has changed name to **`Resistive_eta()`** and the electric current has been added to the function argument list, see §5.2;

- the following global variables have been replaced by constants:

```
g_unitDensity → UNIT_DENSITY;
```

```
g_unitLength → UNIT_LENGTH;
```

```
g_unitVelocity → UNIT_VELOCITY;
```

**Note:** These constant should NOT be set in your **`Init()`** function but must be set as user-defined constants, see §6.1.

- PLUTO 4.1 requires Chombo 3.2 for Adaptive Mesh Refinement, see Chapter 9.

---

# 1. Introduction

---

**PLUTO** is a finite-volume / finite-difference, shock-capturing code designed to integrate a system of conservation laws

$$\frac{\partial \mathbf{U}}{\partial t} = -\nabla \cdot \mathbf{T}(\mathbf{U}) + \mathbf{S}(\mathbf{U}), \quad (1.1)$$

where  $\mathbf{U}$  represents a set of conservative quantities,  $\mathbf{T}(\mathbf{U})$  is the flux tensor and  $\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{U})$  defines the source terms [32, 33]. An equivalent set of primitive variables  $\mathbf{V}$  is more conveniently used for assigning initial and boundary conditions. The explicit form of  $\mathbf{U}$ ,  $\mathbf{V}$ ,  $\mathbf{T}(\mathbf{U})$  and  $\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{U})$  depends on the particular physics module selected:

- *HD*: Newtonian (classical) hydrodynamics, §3.1;
- *MHD*: ideal/resistive magnetohydrodynamics, §3.2;
- *RHD*: special relativistic hydrodynamics, §3.3;
- *RMHD*: special (ideal) relativistic magnetohydrodynamics, §3.4;

**PLUTO** adopts a structured mesh approach for the solution of the system of conservation laws (1.1). Flow quantities are discretized on a logically rectangular computational grid enclosed by a boundary and augmented with guard cells or ghost points in order to implement boundary conditions on a given computational stencil. Computations are done using double precision arithmetic.

The grid can be either *static* or dynamically *adaptive* as the flow evolves. In the static grid version **PLUTO** comes as a stand-alone package entirely written in the C programming language, see [32] for a comprehensive description. In the adaptive grid version the code relies on the Chombo library for adaptive mesh refinement (AMR) written in C++ and Fortran (Chapter 9). A detailed description of the AMR implementation is given in [33].

**PLUTO 4** employs Doxygen as the standard documentation system and the Application Programming Interface (API) reference guide can be found in [Doc/API-ReferenceGuide.html](#).

## 1.1 System Requirements

**PLUTO** can run on most platforms but some software prerequisites must be met, depending on the specific configuration you intend to use. The minimal set to get **PLUTO** running on a workstation with a static grid (no AMR) requires:

- Python (v. 2.xx);
- (ANSI) C compiler;
- GNU make (gmake);

These are usually installed by default on most Linux/Unix platforms. A comprehensive list is shown in Table 1.1.

Starting with **PLUTO 4** parallelization is handled internally and **ArrayLib**, used in previous versions of the code, is no longer necessary. The Chombo library is required for computations making use of Adaptive Mesh Refinement (Chapter 9), while the PNG library should be installed only if PNG output is desired. The HDF5 library is required for I/O with the Chombo library and may also be used with the static grid version of the code.

**PLUTO** has been successfully ported to several parallel platforms including Linux, Windows/Cygwin, Mac OS X, Beowulf clusters, IBM power4 / power5 / power6, SGI Irix, IBM BluGene/P and several others. Figure 1.1 shows the strong scaling on a BlueGene/P machine up to 32,768 processors on a periodic domain with  $512^3$  computational grid zones.

	Static Grid		Adaptive Grid	
	<i>serial</i>	<i>parallel</i>	<i>serial</i>	<i>parallel</i>
Python (> 2.0)	yes	yes	yes	yes
C compiler	yes	yes	yes	yes
C++ compiler	–	–	yes	yes
Fortran compiler	–	–	yes	yes
GNU make	yes	yes	yes	yes
MPI library	–	yes	–	yes
Chombo library (v 3.2)	–	–	yes	yes
HDF5 library (v 1.6 or 1.8)	opt	opt	yes	yes
PNG library	opt	opt	–	–

Table 1.1: Software requirements for different applications of PLUTO. Here “opt” stands for optional, “serial” refers to single-processor runs and “parallel” to multiple-processor architectures.

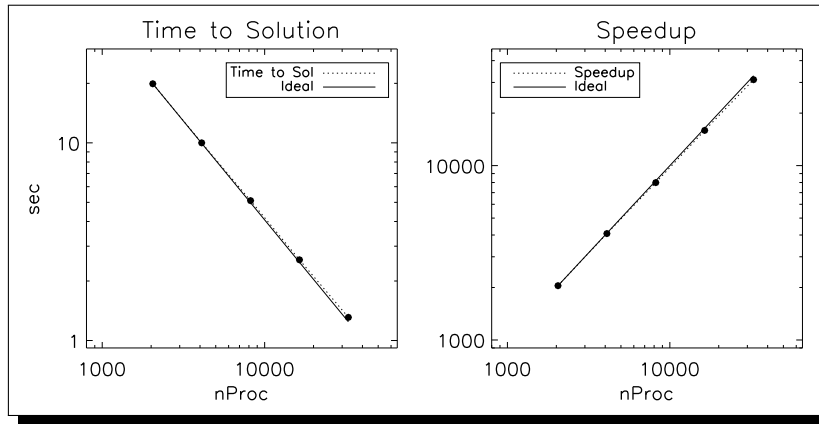


Figure 1.1: Strong scaling of PLUTO on a periodic domain problem with  $512^3$  grid zones. Left panel: average execution time (in seconds) per step vs. number of processors. Right panel: speedup factor computed as  $T_1/T_N$  where  $T_1$  is the (inferred) execution time of the sequential algorithm and  $T_N$  is the execution time achieved with  $N$  processors. Code execution time is given by black circles (+ dotted line) while the solid line shows the ideal scaling.

## 1.2 Directory Structure

Once unpacked, your PLUTO/ root directory should contain the following folders:

- **Config/**: contains machine architecture dependent files, such as information about C compiler, flags, library paths and so on. Important for creating the makefile;
- **Doc/**: documentation directory;
- **Lib/**: repository for additional libraries;
- **Src/**: main repository for all \*.c source files with the exception of the init.c file, which is left to the user. The physics module source files are located in their respective sub-directories: HD/ (classical hydrodynamics), RHD/ (special relativistic hydrodynamics), MHD/ (magnetohydrodynamics), RMHD/ (relativistic magnetohydrodynamics). Cooling, viscosity, thermal conduction and additional physics models are located under the folders with similar names (e.g. Cooling/, Viscosity/, Thermal\_Conduction/). The Templates/ directory contains templates for the user-dependent files such as init.c, pluto.ini, makefile and definitions.h;
- **Tools/**: Collection of useful tools, such as Python scripts, IDL visualization routines, pyPLUTO, etc...;
- **Test\_Problems/**: a directory containing several test-problems used for code verification.

PLUTO should be compiled and executed in a separate working directory which may be anywhere on your local hard drive.

Although most of the current algorithms can be considered in their final stable version, the code is under constant development and updates are released once or twice per year. When upgrading to a

Option	Description
<code>--with-chombo</code>	enables support for adaptive mesh refinement (AMR) using the Chombo library, Chapter 9;
<code>--with-fd</code>	enables support for finite difference schemes, §7.3
<code>--with-fargo</code>	enables support for the FARGO-MHD module, §7.2;
<code>--with-sb</code>	enables support for the shearing-box module, §7.1;
<code>--no-curses</code>	disables the curses terminal control feature of the Python script. Instead a shell-based setup will be used. This switch can be used to circumvent problems with the ncurses library present on some systems (e.g. Snow Leopard 10.6);

Table 1.2: Command line options available when running the Python setup script.

newer version of **PLUTO**, it is recommended that the entire **PLUTO/** directory tree be deleted. Syntax changes are usually listed in the file **CHANGES**, in the **PLUTO/** root directory.

### 1.3 Configuring PLUTO

In order to configure and setup **PLUTO** for a particular problem, *four* main steps have to be followed; the resulting configuration will then be stored in 4 different files, part of your local working directory:

1. **definitions.h**: header file containing all problem-dependent flags required at compilation stage (physics module, geometry, dimensions, etc.), see §2.1;
2. **makefile**: needed to compile **PLUTO**. It depends on your system architecture, §2.2;
3. **pluto.ini**: startup initialization file containing run-time parameters (grid size, CFL,..., see §2.3);
4. **init.c**: implements initial, boundary conditions, etc..., see §2.4.

Chapter 2 gives a detailed description for each step. The Python script **setup.py** must be used for step 1 and 2 and the remaining files (**pluto.ini** and **init.c**, step 3 and 4) should be appropriately edited by the user. Templates for all four files can be found in the **Src/Templates/** directory. Several examples are located in the test directories under **Test.Problem/**.

In order to run the Python script anywhere from your hard disk we recommend to set the shell variable **PLUTO\_DIR** to point to your **PLUTO** distribution. Depending on your environment shell, use either one of

```
~> setenv PLUTO_DIR /home/user/PLUTO # if you're using tcsh shell
~> export PLUTO_DIR=/home/user/PLUTO # if you're using bash shell
```

The **setup.py** script can now be invoked with

```
~/MyWorkDir > python $PLUTO_DIR/setup.py [options]
```

Command line options are listed in Table 1.2 or can be briefly described by invoking **setup.py** with `--help`. By default the Python script uses the **ncurses** library for enhanced terminal control. However, this option may be turned off by invoking the setup script with the `--no-curses` switch. You should then<sup>1</sup> see the menu shown in Fig. 1.2. Additional menus, depending on the physics module, will display later.

### 1.4 Compiling & Running the Code

After the four steps described in §2.1–§2.4 have been completed, you can compile **PLUTO** in your working directory by typing

<sup>1</sup>Python will first create an architecture-dependent file named **sysconf.out** containing system-related information: this file does not have any specific purpose but may be helpful for the user. Whenever an internet connection is available, Python will also notify if new versions of the code are available.

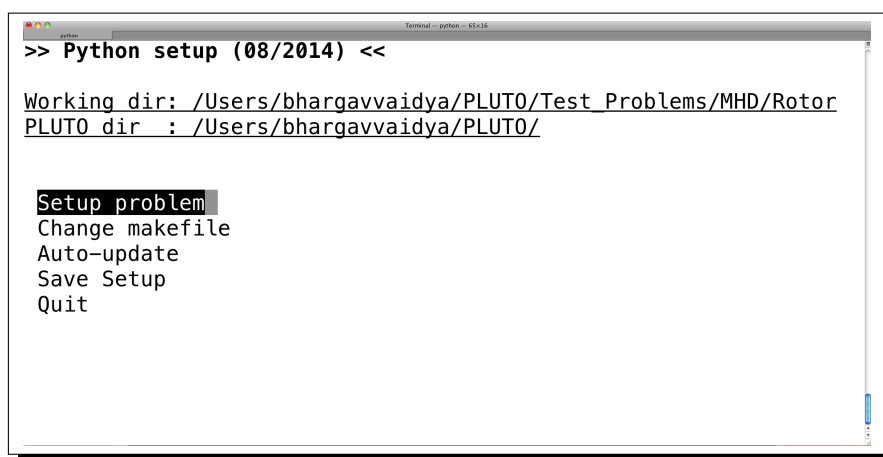


Figure 1.2: Python script main menu.

```
~/MyWorkDir> make # 'gmake' is also fine
```

It is important to remember that the makefile created by Python (see §2.2) guarantees that your working directory is always searched before PLUTO/Src. This turns out to be useful when modifying **PLUTO** source files (§1.5).

If compilation is successful, type

```
~/MyWorkDir> ./pluto [flags]
```

for a single processor run, or

```
~/MyWorkDir> mpirun [...] ./pluto [args]
```

for a parallel run; [...] are options given to MPI, such as number of processors, etc, while [args] are command line options specific to **PLUTO**, see Table 1.3. For example,

```
~/MyWorkDir> ./pluto -restart 5 -maxsteps 840
```

will restart from the 5-th double precision output file and stop computation after 840 steps.

During execution, the integration log will look something like:

```
...
step:0 ; t = 0.0000e+00 ; dt = 1.0000e-04 ; 0 % ; [0.000000, 0]
step:1 ; t = 1.0000e-04 ; dt = 1.0000e-04 ; 0 % ; [1.236510, 10]
step:2 ; t = 2.0000e-04 ; dt = 1.1000e-04 ; 0 % ; [1.236510, 7]
step:3 ; t = 3.1000e-04 ; dt = 1.1000e-04 ; 0 % ; [1.236510, 6]
...
```

where step gives the current integration step, t is the current integration time, dt is the current time step, n% is the percentage of integration. The two numbers in square brackets are, respectively, the maximum Mach number and maximum number of iterations required by the Riemann solver (if iterative, e.g. `two_shock`) during the previous step. For non-iterative Riemann solvers, the last number will always display 0. The maximum Mach number is a very sensitive function of the numerical method it may be used as a “robustness” indicator. Very large Mach numbers or rapid variations usually indicate problems and/or fixes during the computation.

### 1.4.1 Command line options

When running **PLUTO**, a number of command-line switches can be given to enable or disable certain features at run time. Some of them are available only in the static grid version, see Table 1.3 for a description of the available flags.



Option	Description	work w/ AMR
<code>-dec n1 [n2] [n3]</code>	Enable user-defined parallel decomposition mode. The integers <code>n1</code> , <code>n2</code> and <code>n3</code> specify the number of processors along the <code>x1</code> , <code>x2</code> , and <code>x3</code> directions. There must be as many integers as the number of dimensions and their product must equal the total number of processors used by <code>mpirun</code> or an error will occur.	No
<code>-i fname</code>	Use <code>fname</code> as initialization file instead of <code>pluto.ini</code> .	Yes
<code>-h5restart n</code>	Restart computations from the <code>n</code> -th output file in HDF5 double precision format ( <code>.dbl.h5</code> , only for static grids). The input data files are read from the directory specified by the <code>output_dir</code> variables in <code>pluto.ini</code> (default is current working directory). With Chombo-AMR this switch is equivalent to <code>-restart</code> .	Yes
<code>-makegrid</code>	Generate grid only, do not start computations.	No
<code>-maxsteps n</code>	Stop computations after <code>n</code> steps.	Yes
<code>-no-write</code>	Do not write data to disk.	Yes
<code>-no-x1par,</code> <code>-no-x2par,</code> <code>-no-x3par</code>	Do not perform parallel domain decomposition along the <code>x1</code> , <code>x2</code> or <code>x3</code> direction, respectively.	No
<code>-restart n</code>	Restart computations from the <code>n</code> -th output file in double in precision format ( <code>.dbl</code> , for static grid) or Chombo checkpoint file ( <code>chk.nnnn.hdf5</code> for Chombo-AMR). For the static grid, input data files are read from the directory specified by the <code>output_dir</code> variables in <code>pluto.ini</code> (default is current working directory).	Yes
<code>-show-dec</code>	Show domain decomposition when running in parallel mode.	No
<code>-x1jet,</code> <code>-x2jet,</code> <code>-x3jet</code>	Exclude from integration regions of zero pressure gradient that extends up to the end of the domain in the <code>x1</code> , <code>x2</code> or <code>x3</code> direction, respectively. This option is specifically designed for jets propagating along one of the coordinate axis. In parallel mode, parallel decomposition is not performed along the selected direction.	No
<code>-xres n1</code>	Set the grid resolution in the <code>x1</code> direction to <code>n1</code> zones by overriding <code>pluto.ini</code> . Cell aspect ratio is preserved by modifying the grid resolution in the other coordinate directions accordingly.	Yes

Table 1.3: Command line options available when running **PLUTO**. Compatibility with AMR version is given in the last column.  
†: on parallel architectures only

## 1.5 Modifying the Distribution Source Files

**PLUTO** source files are compiled directly from the `PLUTO/Src` directory. Should you need to modify a C source file other than your `init.c`, we strongly advise to copy the file to your local working directory and then edit it, since the latter is always searched before `PLUTO/Src` during the compilation phase. In other words, if you want to modify say, `boundary.c`, copy the file to your working area and introduce the appropriate changes. When `make` is invoked, your local copy of `boundary.c` is compiled since it has priority over `PLUTO/Src/boundary.c` which is actually ignored. In such a way, you can keep track of the problem dependent modification, without affecting the original distribution.

**Note:** Header files (`*.h` or `*.H`) do not follow the same convention and *must* not be copied to the local working directory. Modifications to header files must therefore be done in the original directory.

---

## 2. Problem Setup

---

This chapter explains how to create the four files (`definitions.h`, `makefile`, `pluto.ini` and `init.c`) required to compile and run **PLUTO**.

### 2.1 STEP # 1: header file `definitions.h`

The header file `definitions.h` is created by the Python script `setup.py` by selecting *Setup problem* (see Fig. 2.1). If you do not have an existing `definitions.h`, a new one will be created for you, otherwise the Python script will try to read your current setup from the existing one.

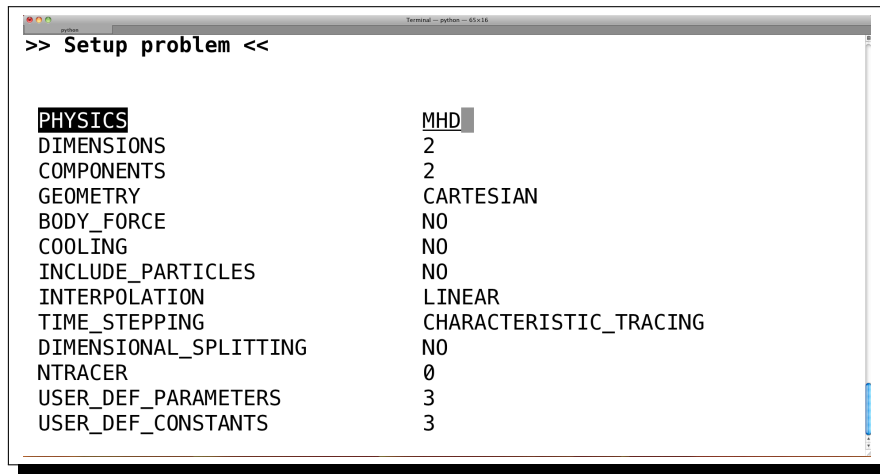


Figure 2.1: The Setup problem menu, needed for your `definitions.h` and `makefile` creation; by moving the arrow keys you should be able to browse through different options.

The header file `definitions.h` also contains other more advanced switches that are not accessible via the Python script (§2.1.12) and should be changed manually. We now describe the options accessible through the Python script.

#### 2.1.1 **PHYSICS**

Specifies the fluid equations to be solved. The available options are:

- *HD*: classical hydrodynamics described by the Euler equations, §3.1;
- *MHD*: single fluid, ideal/resistive magnetohydrodynamics, §3.2;
- *RHD*: special relativistic hydrodynamics, §3.3;
- *RMHD*: special relativistic magnetohydrodynamics, §3.4.

#### 2.1.2 **DIMENSIONS & COMPONENTS**

`DIMENSIONS` sets the number of spatial dimensions of your problem whereas `COMPONENTS` sets the number of vector components (such as velocity and magnetic field) present in the integration. Usually `DIMENSIONS=COMPONENTS`, but one can also have more `COMPONENTS` than `DIMENSIONS`. This is the case, for example, when the “ $2 + \frac{1}{2}$  D” formalism is used, where integration is performed along the first two coordinates (say  $x, y$ ) but the fluid has a non-vanishing velocity component along the third direction as well (say  $\partial v_z / \partial x, \partial v_z / \partial y \neq 0$ ). An example is an axisymmetric 2-D cylindrical problem

(such as a disk or a torus) in the  $(r, z)$  plane with a uniform rotation in the azimuthal direction  $\phi$  (where it is assumed  $\partial/\partial\phi = 0$ ). In all cases it is required that `DIMENSIONS`  $\leq$  `COMPONENTS`.

### 2.1.3 GEOMETRY

Sets the geometry of the problem. Spatial coordinates are generically labeled with  $x_1$ ,  $x_2$  and  $x_3$  and their physical meaning depends on the value assigned to `GEOMETRY`:

- *CARTESIAN*: Cartesian coordinates  $\{x_1, x_2, x_3\} = \{x, y, z\}$ ;
- *CYLINDRICAL*: cylindrical axisymmetric coordinates  $\{x_1, x_2\} = \{r, z\}$  (1 or 2 dimensions);
- *POLAR*: polar cylindrical coordinates  $\{x_1, x_2, x_3\} = \{r, \phi, z\}$ ;
- *SPHERICAL*: spherical coordinates  $\{x_1, x_2, x_3\} = \{r, \theta, \phi\}$ .

Note that when `DIMENSIONS` = 2, the third coordinate  $x_3$  is meaningless and will be set to zero (similarly in 1-D  $x_2$  and  $x_3$  do not play any role). Whenever present, however, the  $\phi$  component of vectors (both in spherical and cylindrical coordinates) is integrated by discretizing the equations in angular momentum conserving form.

We warn that non-Cartesian geometries are handled better when a multi-stage unsplit integrator (i.e. Runge-Kutta) is used, especially if angular coordinates are present and/or steady state solutions are sought.

### 2.1.4 BODY FORCE

Include a body force in the momentum and energy equations. Possible values are:

- *POTENTIAL*: body force is derived from a scalar potential,  $\rho\mathbf{a} = -\rho\nabla\Phi$ ;
- *VECTOR*: body force is expressed as a three-component vector  $\rho\mathbf{a} = \rho\mathbf{g}$ .
- *(VECTOR+POTENTIAL)*: body force is prescribed using both,  $\rho\mathbf{a} = \rho(-\nabla\Phi + \mathbf{g})$ .

More details can be found in §2.4.3.

### 2.1.5 COOLING

Optically thin thermal losses can be included by appropriately setting this flag to one of the following:

- *POWER\_LAW*: radiative losses are proportional to  $\rho^2 T^\alpha$  (§6.2);
- *TABULATED*: radiative losses are computed as  $n^2 \Lambda(T)$ , where  $\Lambda(T)$  is a user-supplied tabulated function of temperature, see §6.3. Alternatively, this module can be used to provide user-defined cooling functions;
- *SNEq*: simplified non-equilibrium cooling function for atomic hydrogen. See §6.4 for more details;
- *H2\_COOL*: optically thin cooling function for molecular and atomic hydrogen. See §6.5.
- *MINEq*: multi-ion non-equilibrium cooling model. It evolves the standard equations augmented with a chemical network of 29 ions, see §6.6 and the work by [54].

### 2.1.6 INTERPOLATION

Sets the spatial order of integration. In the standard (finite volume) version of the code, the following options are available:

- *FLAT*: first order reconstruction. The stencil is 1 point.
- *LINEAR*: piecewise TVD linear interpolation is applied to primitive variables. It is 2<sup>nd</sup> order accurate in space. Stencil is 3 point wide.
- *WENO3*: provide 3<sup>rd</sup> order weighted essentially non oscillatory reconstruction [58] inside a cell using is 3-point stencil.
- *LimO3*: provide 3<sup>rd</sup> order limiter function [9] based on a 3-point stencil.
- *PARABOLIC*: piecewise parabolic method (PPM) as implemented by [10] or [28]. The stencil requires 5 zones.

The default is *LINEAR*. Both *WENO3* and *LimO3* employ a local three-point stencil to achieve piecewise-quadratic reconstruction for smooth data and preserves their accuracy at local extrema thus avoiding clipping of classical second-order TVD limiters and PPM. Non-uniform grid spacing and curvilinear coordinates are handled more correctly with *LINEAR* and *PARABOLIC* using the approach presented in [39].

Note that although 3<sup>rd</sup>-order reconstructions are available, the finite volume version of the code retains a global 2<sup>nd</sup>-order accuracy as fluxes are computed at the interface midpoint. On the contrary, genuine 3<sup>rd</sup> and 5<sup>th</sup> order accurate schemes can be employed using the conservative finite difference framework, §7.3.

### 2.1.7 TIME EVOLUTION

PLUTO has several time-marching algorithms which can be used in either a spatially split or unsplit fashion. If  $\Delta t^n = t^{n+1} - t^n$  is the time increment between two consecutive steps and  $\mathcal{L}$  denotes the discretized spatial operator on the right hand side of Eq. (1.1), the possible options are:

- *EULER*: first order (explicit) Euler algorithm is used to evolve from  $U^n$  to  $U^{n+1}$ :

$$U^{n+1} = U^n + \Delta t^n \mathcal{L}^n$$

- *RK2, RK3*: second or third order TVD Runge Kutta is used to advance the solution from time  $t^n$  to the next step time  $t^{n+1}$ :

RK2	RK3	
$U^* = U^n + \Delta t^n \mathcal{L}^n$	$U^* = U^n + \Delta t^n \mathcal{L}^n$	
—	$U^{**} = \frac{1}{4} \left( 3U^n + U^* + \Delta t^n \mathcal{L}^* \right)$	(2.1)
$U^{n+1} = \frac{1}{2} \left( U^n + U^* + \Delta t^n \mathcal{L}^* \right)$	$U^{n+1} = \frac{1}{3} \left( U^n + 2U^{**} + 2\Delta t^n \mathcal{L}^{**} \right)$	

When `DIMENSIONAL_SPLITTING = YES`, the operator  $\mathcal{L}$  in Eq. (2.1) is one-dimensional. Setting `DIMENSIONAL_SPLITTING = NO` makes the scheme dimensionally unsplit and the right hand side include contributions from all directions simultaneously. Unsplit implementation of the Runge-Kutta algorithms usually requires a somewhat more restrictive CFL condition, see Table 2.1.

- *CHARACTERISTIC\_TRACING, HANCOCK*: they evolve  $U^n$  according to

$$U^{n+1} = U^n + \Delta t^n \mathcal{L}(V^{n+\frac{1}{2}})$$

where  $V^{n+\frac{1}{2}}$  is computed by suitable Taylor expansion. Although the final step is in divergence form, these methods require the primitive formulation of the equations, not yet available

for all modules. They are 2<sup>nd</sup> order accurate in space and time and less dissipative than the previous multi-step algorithms. *HANCOCK* should be combined with a linear interpolant, while *CHARACTERISTIC\_TRACING* which does a more sophisticated characteristic limiting, can be combined with all reconstruction algorithms. The original PPM scheme of [10, 28] is available for the HD, MHD and RHD modules by selecting `TIME_EVOLUTION = CHARACTERISTIC_TRACING`, together with `INTERPOLATION = PARABOLIC` and a *two-shock* Riemann solver (*Roe* or *hlld* alternatively).

Setting `DIMENSIONAL_SPLITTING = NO` yields the spatially unsplit fully corner-coupled method of [12, 30]. This scheme is stable under the condition  $CFL \lesssim 1$  (in 2D) and  $CFL \lesssim 1/2$  (in 3D) and it is slightly more expensive than *RK2*.

**Time Step Determination.** The time step  $\Delta t^n$  is computed using the information available from the previous integration step and it can be controlled by the Courant-Friedrichs-Lewy (CFL) number  $C_a$  within the limits suggested in Table 2.1, see [6]. Thus one immediately sees that, if  $\Delta l$  is the cell physical length, the time step roughly scales as  $\sim \Delta l$  for hyperbolic problems and as  $\sim \Delta l^2$  when parabolic terms are included (§5.4.1). On the contrary, when parabolic terms are included via Super-Time-Stepping integration (§5.4.2) the time step can be much larger being computed solely from the advection time scale (i.e.  $\tau_d = 0$  in the table below).

Multi-step algorithms (*RK2*, *RK3*) work in all system of coordinates and are the default choice. Single-step schemes (*HANCOCK*, *CHARACTERISTIC\_TRACING*) are more sophisticated, have less dissipation and have been tested mainly on Cartesian and cylindrical grids. Have a look at Table 2.2 for a comparison between different (suggested) integration schemes commonly adopted in testing the code.

SCHEME	DIM. SPLIT	CFL Limit
<i>RK</i>	<i>YES</i>	$\Delta t^n \max_d \left[ \max_{ijk} \left( \frac{\lambda_d}{\Delta l_d} + \frac{2\tau_d}{\Delta l_d^2} \right) \right] = C_a \leq 1$
<i>HNCK/ChTr</i>	<i>YES</i>	$\Delta t^n \max_d \left[ \max_{ijk} \left( \frac{\lambda_d}{\Delta l_d} + \frac{2\tau_d}{\Delta l_d^2} \right) \right] = C_a \leq 1$
<i>RK</i>	<i>NO</i>	$\Delta t^n \max_{ijk} \left[ \frac{1}{N_{\text{dim}}} \sum_d \left( \frac{\lambda_d}{\Delta l_d} + \frac{2\tau_d}{\Delta l_d^2} \right) \right] = C_a \leq \frac{1}{N_{\text{dim}}}$
<i>HNCK/ChTr</i>	<i>NO</i>	$\Delta t^n \left[ \max_{ijk} \left( \frac{\lambda_d}{\Delta l_d} \right) + \max_{ijk} \left( \frac{2\tau_d}{\Delta l_d^2} \right) \right] = C_a \leq \begin{cases} 1 & \text{in } 2D \\ 1/2 & \text{in } 3D \end{cases}$

Table 2.1: CFL conditions used by **PLUTO** for different explicit time stepping methods. For a given direction  $d$ ,  $\Delta l_d$  represents the cell physical length in that direction,  $\lambda_d$  provides the largest signal speed while  $\tau_d$  accounts for diffusion processes. Here *HNCK* and *ChTr* stand for *HANCOCK* and *CHARACTERISTIC\_TRACING*, respectively. These limits are based on a stability analysis on the constant coefficient advection-diffusion equation by Beckers (1992), [6].

### 2.1.8 DIMENSIONAL\_SPLITTING

Set this feature to *YES* if you intend to use Strang operator splitting [50] to solve multidimensional equations by a sequence of 1D problem. If `DIMENSIONAL_SPLITTING` is set to *NO* flux contributions are evaluated from all directions simultaneously. Dimensionally unsplit schemes avoid the errors due to operator splitting and are generally preferred. Table 2.2 gives a brief description of commonly used setups.

INTERP.	TIME_ST.	DIM._SPL.	Cost	Comments
<i>LINEAR</i>	<i>RK2</i>	<i>YES, NO</i>	$2N_{\text{dim}}$	Default setup. Compatible with almost every algorithms of the code and work in all system of coordinates and physics modules. The dimensionally unsplit version is stable up to $CFL \lesssim 1/N_{\text{dim}}$ , where $N_{\text{dim}}$ is the number of dimensions.
<i>PARABOLIC,</i> <i>WENO3, LimO3</i>	<i>RK3</i>	<i>YES, NO</i>	$3N_{\text{dim}}$	Similar to the previous setup, but it has better stability properties for higher than 2 <sup>nd</sup> order interpolants. The dimensionally unsplit version is stable up to $CFL \lesssim 1/N_{\text{dim}}$ .
<i>LINEAR</i>	<i>HANCOCK</i>	<i>YES</i>	$N_{\text{dim}}$	MUSCL-Hancock second-order scheme of [56, 55]. Computationally more efficient than RK integrators, it is probably the fastest 2 <sup>nd</sup> order algorithm. Works well for the HD/RHD modules and the MHD/RMHD modules (with <i>DIVERGENCE_CLEANING</i> or <i>EIGHT_WAVES</i> ), particularly on Cartesian (1,2,3 dimensions) or cylindrical geometries.
<i>LINEAR</i>	<i>ChTr</i>	<i>YES</i>	$N_{\text{dim}}$	More sophisticated than the previous one, it yields the Piecewise Linear Method of [56, 11].
<i>PARABOLIC</i>	<i>ChTr</i>	<i>YES</i>	$N_{\text{dim}}$	Gives the original Piecewise-Parabolic-Method (PPM) of [10]. Suggested for HD, RHD or MHD (with <i>DIVERGENCE_CLEANING</i> or <i>EIGHT_WAVES</i> ) in Cartesian (1,2,3 dimensions) or cylindrical geometries. It is stable up to $CFL \lesssim 1$ and it has small dissipation.
<i>LINEAR</i>	<i>ChTr,</i> <i>HANCOCK</i>	<i>NO</i>	$2N_{\text{dim}}$	Yields the Corner-Transport Upwind method of [12, 47, 30] and [17] for the HD/RHD or MHD/RMHD modules (the RMHD version works only with <i>HANCOCK</i> ). It is fully unsplit and stable up to 1 (in 2-D) and $\sim 0.5$ in 3D. It is one of the most sophisticated algorithms available. It is suitable for computations in Cartesian and cylindrical grids in the HD, RHD and MHD module.

Table 2.2: Suggested algorithm configurations. The cost (4th column) is given in terms of number of Riemann problems per cell per step.  $N_{\text{dim}}$  is the number of spatial dimensions. *ChTr* stands for *CHARACTERISTIC\_TRACING*.

### 2.1.9 NTRACER

The number of passive scalars or “colors” (denoted with  $Q_k$ ) obeying simple advection equations of the form:

$$\frac{\partial Q_k}{\partial t} + \mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla Q_k = 0 \quad \Longleftrightarrow \quad \frac{\partial(\rho Q_k)}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot (\rho Q_k \mathbf{v}) = 0 \quad (2.2)$$

The second form gives the conservative equation and it is the one actually being discretized by the code. The array index used to access tracer variables (§2.4.1, §2.4.2) is TRC for the first tracer, TRC+1 for the second one and so on. The maximum number is 4.

### 2.1.10 USER\_DEF\_PARAMETERS

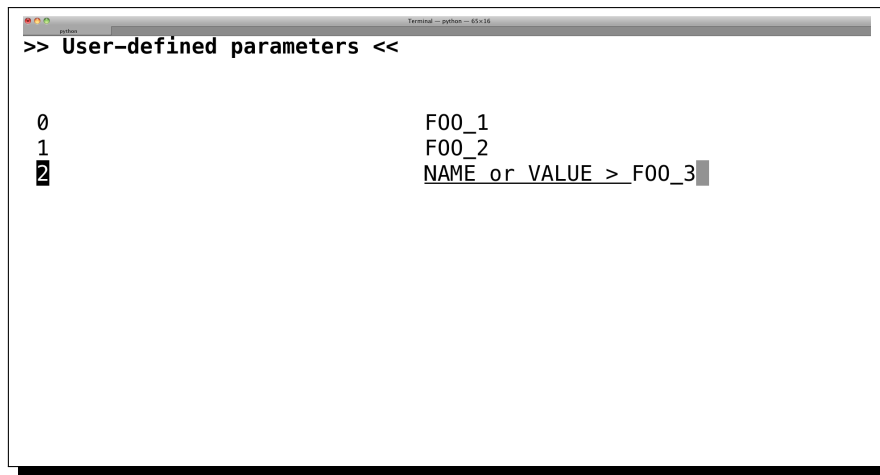


Figure 2.2: User-defined parameter names are chosen in this sub-menu.

Sets the number of user-defined parameters that can be changed at runtime and accessed from anywhere in the code. The explicit numerical value is read at runtime from `pluto.ini` and can be changed before execution without re-compiling the code. The parameters are identified by means of a label corresponding to an index of the global array `g_inputParam` visible anywhere in the program. If, for instance, `USER_DEF_PARAMETERS` has been set equal to 3, you will be prompted to define 3 different “labels”, say `FOO_1`, `FOO_2` and `FOO_3`, as in Fig. 2.2. These names are the integer indexes of the `g_inputParam` array: `g_inputParam[FOO_1]` will contain the actual value of the first user-defined parameter, `g_inputParam[FOO_2]` the second one and so forth.

The maximum number is 31 and parameter names should be chosen with care in order to avoid overlapping conflicts with names that are already defined in the code. Although there are no strict rules, we strongly advise to use capital letters, to avoid short labels such as “V0” or “VX” and to choose a more representative name that explains the use of the variable on its own, e.g., `PAR_INFLOW_VEL`.

Parameter names (and values) are automatically inserted inside `pluto.ini` in the correct order after the execution of the python script. However, if you use a different initialization file than `pluto.ini`, you may have to set the parameter names together with their values manually.

### 2.1.11 USER\_DEF\_CONSTANTS

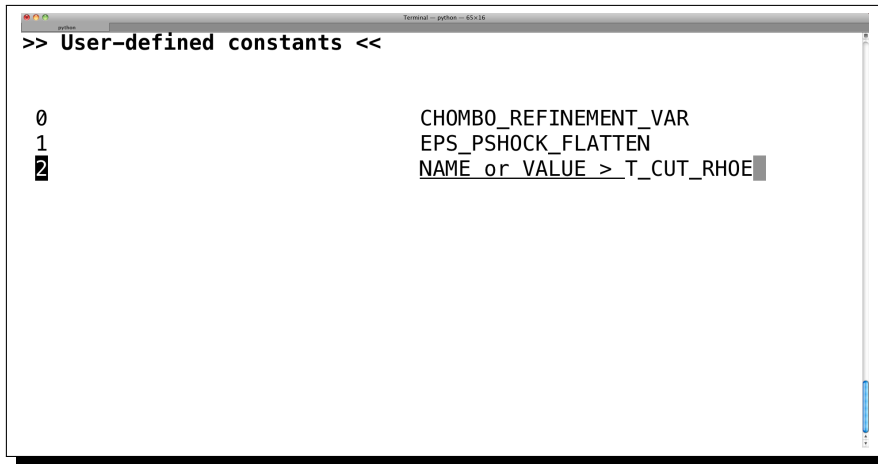


Figure 2.3: User-defined constant names are chosen in this sub-menu.

Sets the number of user-defined symbolic constants (i.e. macros). When `USER_DEF_CONSTANTS` is set to a number greater than 0, you will be prompted to enter the name of the constants and their values in a subsequent menu in a way similar to §2.1.10, see Fig. 2.3. The value of a symbolic constant can be either a number or another symbolic constant previously defined by the code (e.g. `YES` or `NO`) and cannot be changed at runtime.

Symbolic constants are useful in the following circumstances:

1. conditional compilation: useful when your initial configuration contains computationally expensive code blocks that should be compiled separately. As an example, set `USER_DEF_CONSTANTS` to 1 in the main menu and later, in the corresponding sub-menu, define the symbolic constant name as `SETUP_VERSION` and give it the value of 0 or 1. This symbolic macro name can then be used inside `init.c` (or any other source file) for conditional compilation:

```
#if SETUP_VERSION == 0
{
    /* implements version 0... */
}
#elif SETUP_VERSION == 1
{
    /* implements version 1... */
}
#endif
```

2. fine-tuning of some of the code default options (expert users): override the value of some of the symbolic constants employed by different numerical algorithms. A list is given in Table B.1. This gives the user more control on the code and it avoids copying and modifying source files in the local working directory. If you're not expert in this, please do not touch the default values.

A simple example is given by configuration #10 in the `Test_Problems/MHD/Rayleigh_Taylor` problem where the symbolic constant

```
#define USE_RANDOM_PERTURBATION NO
```

is be used in `init.c` to enable/disable a random perturbation. Another typical example is provided by the CGS physical units described §6.1.

**Note:** Several symbolic constants and macros are already provided by **PLUTO** by default. Please consult Appendix B.



### 2.1.12 Additional Switches

Besides the user-defined constants discussed so far, which are accessible via the Python script, `definitions.h` contains additional switches that are more frequent and are always shown. These constants are not accessible via the Python script, but may be changed just by editing your `definitions.h`:

- `INITIAL_SMOOTHING` (*YES/NO*):  
when set to *YES*, initial conditions are assigned by sub-sampling and averaging different values inside each cell. It is useful to create smooth profiles of sharp boundaries not aligned with the grid (e.g., a circle in Cartesian coordinates).
- `WARNING_MESSAGES` (*YES/NO*):  
issue a warning message every time a numerical problem or inconsistency is encountered; setting `WARNING_MESSAGES` to *YES* will tell **PLUTO** to print what, when and where a numerical problem occurred.
- `PRINT_TO_FILE` (*YES/NO*):  
when set to *YES* it tells **PLUTO** to re-direct the output log to the file `pluto.log`. If this file does not exist it will be created; if the file exists but integration starts from initial conditions, it will be overwritten. Finally, if you restart from a previously saved file, the output will be appended.
- `INTERNAL_BOUNDARY` (*YES/NO*):  
when turned to *YES*, it allows to overwrite or change the solution array anywhere inside the computational domain. This is done inside the `UserDefBoundary()` function when `side==0`, see §2.4.2. This option is particularly useful when flow variables must be kept constant in time or to assign lower/upper threshold values to any physical quantity (e.g. density or pressure).
- `SHOCK_FLATTENING` (*NO/ONED/MULTID*):  
Provides additional dissipation in proximity of strong shocks. When set to *ONED*, spatial slopes are progressively reduced following a one-dimensional shock recognition pattern, as in [10]. This is done separately dimension by dimension.  
  
When set to *MULTID*, a multi dimensional strategy is used by which, upon shock detection, i) interpolation (in every direction) reverts to the *MINMOD* limiter and ii) fluxes are computed using the HLL Riemann solver. The flagging strategy is set in `States/findshock.c`. The *MULTID* shock flattening has proven to be an effective adaptation strategy that can noticeably increase the code robustness. It is highly suggested for complex flow structures involving strong shocks.
- `ARTIFICIAL_VISCOSITY` (*YES/NO*):  
when set to *YES*, it includes additional dissipation using Lapidus-type viscosity. This should be used only with the two-shock Riemann solver.
- `CHAR_LIMITING` (*YES/NO*):  
set it to *YES* to perform reconstruction on characteristic variables rather than primitive. It is available for the HD, RHD and MHD modules. Although somewhat more expensive, characteristic variable interpolation is known to produce better quality solutions by suppressing unwanted numerical oscillation in proximity of strong discontinuities and leading to a better entropy enforcement. We recommend setting this switch to *YES* whenever possible.
- `LIMITER` (*string*):  
Set the limiter(s) to be applied when `INTERPOLATION` is set to *LINEAR*. Here *string* can be one of
  - `FLAT_LIM`: set slope to zero (1<sup>st</sup> order reconstruction);
  - `MINMOD_LIM`: use the minmod limiter (most diffusive);
  - `VANALBADA_LIM`: use the van Albada limiter function;
  - `OSPRES_LIM`: use the OSPRE limiter;
  - `VANLEER_LIM`: use the harmonic mean limiter of van Leer;

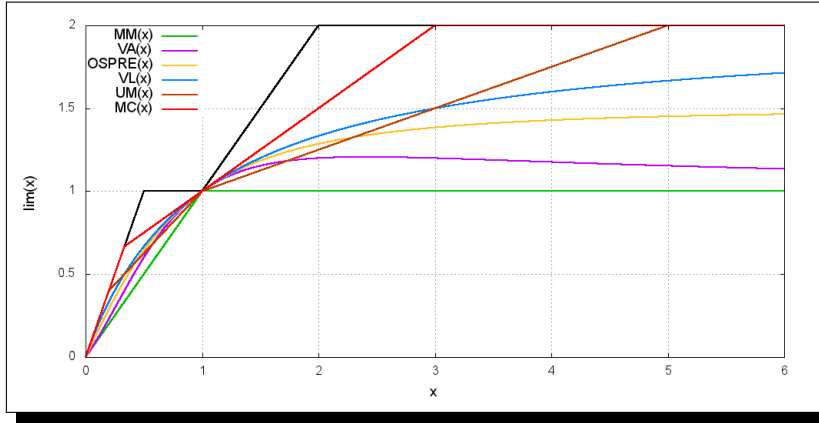


Figure 2.4: Second-order TVD limiter functions used by **PLUTO** as functions of the left to right slope ratio  $x = \Delta V_{i-\frac{1}{2}} / \Delta V_{i+\frac{1}{2}}$ . Larger values of  $\lim(x)$  indicate larger compressive behavior. In this sense, the minmod limiter ( $MM(x)$ ) and the monotonized central limiter ( $MC(x)$ ) are the least and most compressive, respectively.

- `UMIST_LIM`: use the umist limiter;
- `MC_LIM`: use the monotonized central difference limiter (least diffusive);
- `FOURTH_ORDER_LIM`: use the fourth-order approximate limiter of [11, 47].
- `DEFAULT`: keep the default setting (defined in `Src/States/set_limiter.c`).

where `MINMOD_LIM` is the most diffusive and `FOURTH_ORDER_LIM` is the least diffusive limiter. The TVD diagram for the various limiter functions is shown in Fig 2.4.

All limiters employ a 3-point stencil except for `FOURTH_ORDER_LIM` which uses 5 zones.

- `CT_EMF_AVERAGE` (*string*, only for `CONSTRAINED_TRANSPORT` MHD/RMHD): controls how the electromotive force (EMF) is integrated from the face center to the edges. This is discussed in more detailed in §3.2.4.3.
- `CT_EN_CORRECTION` (*YES/NO*, only for `CONSTRAINED_TRANSPORT` MHD/RMHD): this option is available only in the MHD and RMHD modules. The default is *NO*, implying that energy is not corrected after the conservative update. However, for low-beta plasma one may find useful to switch this option to *YES*, as described in [4].
- `ASSIGN_VECTOR_POTENTIAL` (*YES/NO*): when set to *YES*, magnetic field components are initialized from the vector potential. In the constrained transport algorithm (CT, §3.2.4.3), this guarantees that the magnetic field has zero divergence. When set to *NO*, assignment proceeds in the usual way, see §3.2.3 for more details.
- `UPDATE_VECTOR_POTENTIAL` (*YES/NO*): enable this option if you wish to evolve the vector potential in time and save it to disk. Note that `ASSIGN_VECTOR_POTENTIAL` must be enabled.

## 2.2 STEP # 2: makefile creation

The makefile contains instructions to compile and link C source code files and produce the executable `pluto`. The Python script creates a new makefile every time you choose *Change makefile* from the menu; otherwise, it automatically updates the existing one after you have finished the problem setup.

If you choose to create a new makefile, Python will ask you to select an appropriate `.defs` file containing architecture-dependent flags from the `Config/` directory. The template `Config/Template.defs` can be used to create a new configuration from scratch.

The simplest example is a definition file for a single-processor without any additional library. In this case it suffices to set:

```
CC      = cc
CFLAGS  = -c -O
LDFLAGS = -lm

PARALLEL = FALSE # TRUE/FALSE: enable/disable parallel mode
USE_HDF5  = FALSE # TRUE/FALSE: enable/disable support for HDF5 library
USE_PNG   = FALSE # TRUE/FALSE: enable/disable support for PNG library
```

where `CC` is the name of your C compiler (`cc`, `gcc`, `mpicc`, etc...), `CFLAGS` are command line options (such as optimization, search path, etc...) and `LDFLAGS` contains options to be passed to the linker.

The variables `PARALLEL`, `USE_HDF5` and `USE_PNG` can be set to either `TRUE` or `FALSE` to enable or disable parallel mode, support for HDF5 library and support for PNG library respectively in the *static* grid version of **PLUTO**. These are discussed in more details in §2.2.1, §2.2.2 and §2.2.3. When set to `TRUE` the same variable name is passed to **PLUTO** as a `#define` directive with value 1.

As an example, if `USE_HDF5` is set to `TRUE` inside a `.defs` file then any C source file containing instructions inside a preprocessor directive `#ifdef USE_HDF5 ... #endif` statement will be compiled.

**Note:** These switches are effective only in the static grid version of the code and have no effect when creating a **PLUTO-Chombo** makefile, §9.2.

### 2.2.1 MPI Library (Parallel) Support

Parallel executables for the static grid version of **PLUTO** are created by specifying the name of a MPI C compiler (e.g. `mpicc`) and by setting the makefile variable `PARALLEL` to `TRUE` in your `.defs` file:

```
CC      = mpicc # or similar
...

PARALLEL = TRUE
...

#####
# MPI additional specifications
#####

ifeq ($(strip $(PARALLEL)), TRUE)
  USE_ASYNC_IO =      # if TRUE, enable Asynchronous binary I/O
endif
```

In this case, you may also modify existing variables or add new ones inside the conditional statement beginning with `ifeq`.

When parallel mode is enabled, C source code sections that are specific to MPI should be enclosed inside `#ifdef PARALLEL ... #endif` statements.

#### 2.2.1.1 Asynchronous I/O

By enabling the `USE_ASYNC_IO` to `TRUE` (inside the chosen `.defs`), **PLUTO** allows to replace the standard blocking calls of MPI with non-blocking and split collective calls available in the MPI-2 I/O standard<sup>1</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> Contrary to a blocking call which will not return until the I/O request is completed, a non-blocking call initiates an I/O operation but does not wait for its completion

Given suitable hardware, this allows the transfer of data out/in the user's buffer to proceed concurrently with computation. A separate request complete call is needed to complete the I/O request, i.e., to confirm that the data has been read or written and that it is safe for the user to reuse the buffer. Overall, this results in an improved performance for intensive I/O computations. More details may be found in [http://www.prace-project.eu/IMG/pdf/petascale\\_astrophysical\\_simulations\\_with\\_pluto.pdf](http://www.prace-project.eu/IMG/pdf/petascale_astrophysical_simulations_with_pluto.pdf).

**Note:** This is an *experimental* feature that can be used, in the current version of the code, only for `.flt` or `.dbl` binary files for saving cell-centered data.

### 2.2.2 HDF5 Library Support

If your system is already configured with serial or parallel HDF5 libraries, you may enable support for HDF5 I/O in the static grid version of **PLUTO** by turning the makefile variable `USE_HDF5` to `TRUE` inside your `.defs` file. If you do not have HDF5 installed, you may follow the installation guidelines given in §9.1.1. Note that the same HDF5 library can be used for both the static and AMR versions of **PLUTO** although support for HDF5 in the AMR version is enabled differently, see §9.1.2.

Once `USE_HDF5` has been set to `TRUE`, add the HDF5 library path to the list of directories to be searched for header files as well as the corresponding linker option for HDF5 library files. Note that different pathnames should be given if you are building **PLUTO** in serial or parallel mode. These information are supplied using the `INCLUDE_DIRS` and `LDFLAGS` variables, respectively:

```
...
USE_HDF5 = TRUE
...

#####
#      HDF5 library options
#####

ifeq ($(strip $(USE_HDF5)), TRUE)
HDF5_LIB = /usr/local/lib/HDF5-1.xx
INCLUDE_DIRS += -I$(HDF5_LIB)/include
LDFLAGS      += -L$(HDF5_LIB)/lib -lhdf5 -lz
endif
```

**Note:** **PLUTO** uses the HDF5 1.6 API although it may be linked with HDF5 1.8.x without any problem since the `H5_USE_16_API` macro (defined in `hdf5.io.c`) forces the library to use HDF5 1.6 macro definitions.

### 2.2.3 PNG Library Support

Whenever the portable network graphics (PNG) library is installed on your system, you may enable support for 2D output using PNG color images. To do so, simply set to `TRUE` the corresponding `USE_PNG` variable inside your `.defs` file and add the linker option to the `LDFLAGS` variable:

```
...
USE_PNG = TRUE
...

#####
#      PNG library options
#####

ifeq ($(USE_PNG), TRUE)
LDFLAGS += -lpng
endif
```

### 2.2.4 Including Additional Files: local\_make

Additional (e.g. user defined) files may be added to the standard object list created by Python in your makefile. To this end, create a new file named `local_make` like:

```
OBJ      += myfile.o
HEADERS += myheader.h
```

This will instruct `make` that **PLUTO** has to be compiled and linked together with the (user-supplied) file `myfile.c` which depends on `myheader.h`. This is particularly useful when the user wants to compile and link the code together with supplementary routines contained in external files.

## 2.3 STEP # 3: The initialization file pluto.ini

At start-up, the code checks for the pluto.ini input file (or a different one if the `-i` command flag is given) that contains all the run-time information necessary for integration. A template for this file can be found in the `Src/Templates` directory. The initialization file is divided into eight different “blocks” enclosed by a pair of square brackets `[...]`. Each block contains a set of labels and associated (mandatory or optional) fields:

```
[Grid]
X1-grid    1    0.0    100    u    1.0
X2-grid    1    0.0    100    u    1.0
X3-grid    1    0.0    1    u    1.0

[Chombo Refinement]
Levels      4
Ref_ratio   2 2 2 2 2
Regrid_interval 2 2 2 2
Refine_thresh 0.3
Tag_buffer_size 3
Block_factor 4
Max_grid_size 32
Fill_ratio  0.75

[Time]
CFL          0.4
CFL_max_var  1.1
CFL_par      0.3      # optional
rmax_par     40.0     # optional
tstop        1.0
first_dt     1.e-4

[Solver]
Solver        tvdlf

[Boundary]
X1-beg        outflow
X1-end        outflow
X2-beg        outflow
X2-end        outflow
X3-beg        outflow
X3-end        outflow

[Static Grid Output]
uservar       0
output_dir    ./      # optional
dbl           1.0 -1   single_file
flt           -1.0 -1   single_file
vtk           -1.0 -1   single_file # optional
dbl.h5        1.0 2.40h # optional
flt.h5        1.0 -1   # optional
tab           -1.0 -1   # optional
ppm           -1.0 -1   # optional
png           -1.0 -1   # optional
log           1
analysis      -1.0 -1   # optional

[Chombo HDF5 output]
Checkpoint_interval -1.0 0
Plot_interval      1.0 0

[Parameters]
SCRH              0
```

Tag labels on the left side should not be changed. They identify appropriate field(s) following on the same line. Block ordering is irrelevant. The quantities (and related data-types) read from the file are now described.

### 2.3.1 The [Grid] block

Defines the physical domain and generates the grid.

- X1-grid:    (*integer*)    (*double*) (*integer*) (*char*)    (...)    (*double*);
- X2-grid:    (*integer*)    (*double*) (*integer*) (*char*)    (...)    (*double*);
- X3-grid:    (*integer*)    (*double*) (*integer*) (*char*)    (...)    (*double*);

For each dimension: the first (*integer*) defines the number of non-overlapping, adjacent one-dimensional grid patches making up the computational domain (**Note:** this has nothing to do with parallel decomposition which is separately carried out by MPI).

If, say, a uniform grid covers the whole physical domain this number should be set to 1. If two consecutive adjacent grids are used, then 2 is the correct choice and so on. For each patch, the triplet (*double*) (*integer*) (*char*) specifies, respectively, the leftmost node coordinate value, number of points and grid type for that patch; there must be as many triplets (...) as the number of patches. Since patches do not overlap, the rightmost node value of one grid defines the leftmost node value of the next adjacent one. The last (*double*) specify the rightmost node coordinate value of the last segment, which is also the rightmost node value in that direction. If a dimension is ignored, then 1 grid-point only should be assigned to that grid.

The global domain therefore extends, in each direction, from the first (*double*) node coordinate to the last (*double*) node coordinate. These values can be accessed from anywhere in the code using the global variables `g_domBeg[d]` and `g_domEnd[d]`, where `d=IDIR, JDIR, KDIR` is used to select the direction.

The grid-type (*char*) entry can take the following values:

- *u* or *uniform*: a uniform grid patch is constructed; if  $x_L$  and  $x_R$  are the leftmost and rightmost point of the patch, the grid spacing becomes:

$$\Delta x = \frac{x_R - x_L}{N}$$

- *s* or *stretched*: a stretched grid is generated. Stretched grids can be used only if at least one uniform grid is present. The stretching ratio  $r$  is computed as follows:

$$\Delta x (r + r^2 + \dots + r^N) = x_R - x_L \implies r \frac{1 - r^N}{1 - r} = \frac{x_R - x_L}{\Delta x}$$

where  $\Delta x$  is taken from the closest uniform grid,  $N$  is the number of points in the stretched grid and  $x_L$  and  $x_R$  are the leftmost and rightmost points of the patch.

- $l\pm$ : a logarithmic grid is generated. When  $l+$  is invoked, the mesh size is increasing with the coordinate:

$$\Delta x_i = (x_{i-\frac{1}{2}} + |x_L| - x_L) (10^{\Delta\xi} - 1), \quad \Delta\xi = \frac{1}{N} \log \left( \frac{x_R + |x_L| - x_L}{|x_L|} \right)$$

when  $l-$  is invoked, the mesh size *decreases* with the coordinate:

$$\Delta x_i = (x_{i-\frac{1}{2}} - |x_L| - x_R) (10^{\Delta\xi} - 1), \quad \Delta\xi = -\frac{1}{N} \log \left( \frac{x_R + |x_L| - x_L}{|x_L|} \right)$$

In practice, the mesh spacing in the  $l+$  grid is obtained by reversing the spacing in the  $l-$  grid.

**Note:** The interval should not include the origin when using a logarithmic grid.

In *CYLINDRICAL* or *SPHERICAL* coordinates, a radial logarithmic grid has the advantage of preserving the cell aspect ratio at any distance from the origin. In addition, the condition to obtain

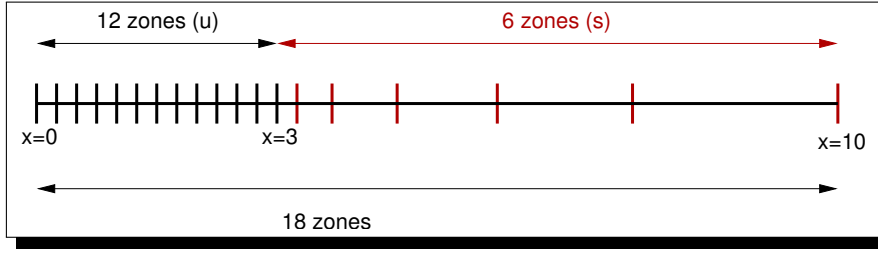


Figure 2.5: Example of one dimensional grid with a uniform (left) and stretched segment (right in red) covering the interval  $[0, 10]$ .

approximately squared cells (aspect ratio  $\approx 1$ ) is  $\Delta r_1 \approx r_1 \Delta \phi$  where  $\Delta r_1 = r_L (e^{\Delta \xi} - 1)$  is the radial spacing of the first active computational zone. This condition can be used to determine either the number of points in the radial direction or the endpoint:

$$\log \frac{r_R}{r_L} = N_r \log \frac{2 + \Delta \phi}{2 - \Delta \phi}.$$

Beware that non-uniform grids may introduce extra dissipation in the algorithm. Changes in the grid spacing are correctly accounted for when `INTERPOLATION` is set to either `PARABOLIC` or `WENO3`.

**Example # 1:** A simple uniform grid extending from  $x_L = 0.0$  to  $x_R = 10.0$  with 128 zones can be specified using:

```
X1-grid 1 0.0 128 u 10.0
```

**Example # 2:** consider a one-dimensional physical domain extending from 0.0 to 10.0 with a total of 18 zones, but a finer grid is required for  $0 \leq x \leq 3$ . Then one might specify

```
X1-grid 2 0.0 12 u 3.0 6 s 10.0
```

which generates a uniform grid with 12 zones for  $0 \leq x \leq 3$ , and a stretched grid with 6 zones for  $3 \leq x \leq 10$ , see Fig.2.5

When the computational grid is generated, each processor owns a domain portion defined by the global integer variables  $\text{IBEG} \leq i \leq \text{IEND}$ ,  $\text{JBEG} \leq j \leq \text{JEND}$  and  $\text{KBEG} \leq k \leq \text{KEND}$ . Ghost cells are added outside the local computational domain to complete the stencil at the boundaries, see Fig. 2.6. The global variables `NX1`, `NX2` and `NX3` define the total number of points (boundaries *excluded*) such that  $\text{IEND} - \text{IBEG} + 1 = \text{NX1}$ ,  $\text{JEND} - \text{JBEG} + 1 = \text{NX2}$ ,  $\text{KEND} - \text{KBEG} + 1 = \text{NX3}$ . The total number of zones (for a given processor, boundaries *included*) is given by the global variables `NX1_TOT`, `NX2_TOT` and `NX3_TOT`, see Fig. 2.6.

When using Adaptive Mesh Refinement with the Chombo library (see Chapter 9), only one patch is allowed to define the base grid level (level 0). The grid type *u*, *s* or *l±* is ignored and a uniform grid is always assumed unless the `CHOMBO_LOGR` switch is enabled to generate a logarithmic radial grid, see §9.3. Cells must not necessarily have the same physical length in each direction (e.g., squares in 2D, cubes in 3D) but can have an aspect ratio different from 1. The refinement options are set in the `Chombo Refinement` section.

### 2.3.2 The [Chombo Refinement] Block

Controls the grid refinement if **PLUTO** has been compiled with the Chombo library, see §9.4.1. It is ignored otherwise.



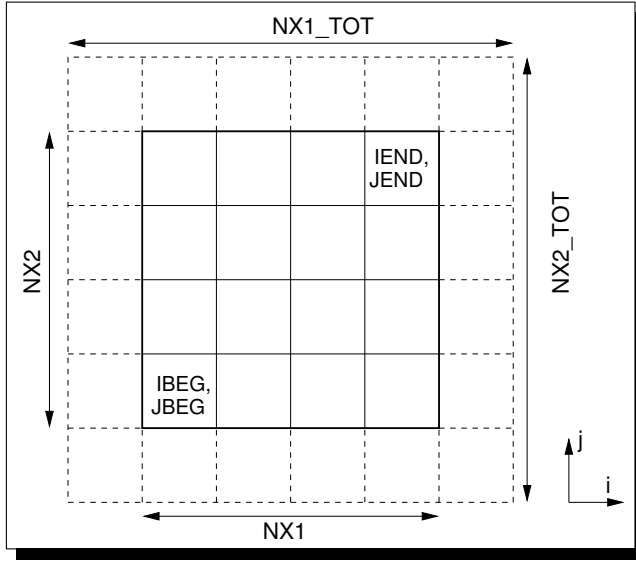


Figure 2.6: Computational grid in 2 dimensions with  $NX1 = NX2 = 4$  and 1 ghost zone. Internal zones (solid boxed) are spanned by  $IBEG \leq i \leq IEND$ ,  $JBEG \leq j \leq JEND$ . Dashed boxes represent boundary ghost zones.

### 2.3.3 The [Time] Block

This section specifies some adjustable time-marching parameters:

- `CFL` (*double*)  
Courant number: it controls the time step length and, in general, it must be less than 1. The actual limit can be inferred from Table 2.1. In the case of unsplit Runge-Kutta time stepping, for instance,  $CFL \lesssim 1/N_{\text{dim}}$  where  $N_{\text{dim}}$  is the number of spatial dimensions while for dimensionally split methods one has  $CFL \lesssim 1$ . Certain combinations of algorithms may have more stringent limitations: a second-order Runge-Kutta algorithm with parabolic reconstruction, for example, requires  $CFL \lesssim 0.4$  for stability reasons.
- `CFL_max_var` (*double*)  
Maximum value allowed for  $\Delta t^n / \Delta t^{n-1}$  (maximum time step growth between two consecutive steps).
- `CFL_par` (*double*) [optional]  
When parabolic terms are integrated using operator splitting (with Super-Time-Stepping, §5.4.2), it controls the diffusion Courant number. The default value is  $0.8/N_{\text{dim}}$ . This parameter has no effect when parabolic terms are included via standard explicit integration.
- `rmax_par` (*double*) [optional]  
When parabolic terms are integrated using operator splitting (with STS), it sets the maximum ratio between the actual time step and the explicit parabolic time step (i.e.  $\Delta t^n / \Delta t_{\text{par}}^n$ ). The default value is 100. This parameter has no effect when parabolic terms are included via standard explicit integration.
- `tstop` (*double*)  
integration ends when  $t = \mathbf{tstop}$ , unless a maximum number of steps (§1.4) is given. **tstop** has to be  $> 0.0$ .
- `first_dt` (*double*)  
The initial time step. A typical value is  $10^{-6}$ .

### 2.3.4 The [Solver] Block

- `Solver` (*string*)  
sets the Riemann solver for flux computation. From the most accurate (i.e. least diffusive) to the least accurate (i.e. most diffusive):

- *two\_shock*: The Riemann problem is solved exactly or approximately (depending on the particular solver implemented for a given physics module) at every interface; this is usually more accurate, but computationally intensive. See [10] for the HD module, and [29] for the relativistic hydro equations;
- *roe*: Linearized Roe Riemann solver based on characteristic decomposition of the Roe matrix, [45].
- *ausm+*: Advection Upstream Splitting Method of [23] (only for the HD module);
- *hlld*: The hlld approximate Riemann solver of [40] (for the adiabatic case), [31] (for the isothermal case) and [36] for the relativistic MHD equations;
- *hlldc*: Harten, Lax, Van Leer approximate Riemann Solver with the contact discontinuity;
- *hll*: Harten, Lax, Van Leer approximate Riemann Solver;
- *tvdlf*: A simple Lax-Friedrichs scheme is used.

Note that not all solvers are available for a given physics module, see Table 2.3. We warn the user that, under some circumstances (high Mach number flows, low density plasmas), more diffusive solvers such as HLL or TVDLF turn out to be more robust than accurate solvers. However, hybrid/adaptive strategies can be turned on when `SHOCK_FLATTENING` is set to `MULTID`, §2.1.12.

### 2.3.5 The *[Boundary]* Block

Specifies the type of boundary condition to be applied in the physical ghost zones of the computational domain:

- *X1-beg* (*string*)
- *X1-end* (*string*)
- *X2-beg* (*string*)
- *X2-end* (*string*)
- *X3-beg* (*string*)
- *X3-end* (*string*)

Assuming that  $q$  is a scalar quantity and  $n$  is the coordinate direction orthogonal to the boundary plane, *string* can be one of the following:

- *outflow*  
set zero gradient across the boundary:  $\frac{\partial q}{\partial n} = 0$ ,  $\frac{\partial \mathbf{v}}{\partial n} = 0$ ,  $\frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial n} = 0$
- *reflective*  
reflective (rigid walls) boundary conditions. Variables are symmetrized across the boundary and normal components of vector fields flip signs,

$$q \rightarrow q, \quad \begin{cases} v_n \rightarrow -v_n \\ B_n \rightarrow -B_n \end{cases}, \quad \begin{cases} \mathbf{v}_t \rightarrow \mathbf{v}_t \\ \mathbf{B}_t \rightarrow \mathbf{B}_t \end{cases}$$

	<i>two_shock</i>	<i>roe</i>	<i>ausm+</i>	<i>hlld</i>	<i>hlldc</i>	<i>hll</i>	<i>tvdlf</i>
HD	✓	✓	✓	-	✓	✓	✓
MHD	-	✓	-	✓	✓	✓	✓
RHD	✓	-	-	-	✓	✓	✓
RMHD	-	-	-	✓	✓	✓	✓

Table 2.3: Available Riemann solvers for the different physics module.

where  $n(t)$  is normal (tangential) to the interface.

- *axisymmetric*

same as *reflective*, except for the angular component of  $v_\phi$  or  $B_\phi$  which also changes sign:

$$q \rightarrow q, \quad \left\{ \begin{array}{l} v_n \rightarrow -v_n \\ B_n \rightarrow -B_n \end{array} \right., \quad \left\{ \begin{array}{l} v_\phi \rightarrow -v_\phi \\ B_\phi \rightarrow -B_\phi \end{array} \right., \quad \left\{ \begin{array}{l} v_{axis} \rightarrow v_{axis} \\ B_{axis} \rightarrow B_{axis} \end{array} \right.$$

where *axis* is  $(r = 0, z)$  or  $(r, \theta = 0)$  in cylindrical or spherical coordinates.

- *eqtsymmetric*

sets equatorial symmetry with respect to a given plane. It is similar to *reflective*, but with reversed sign for the magnetic field:

$$q \rightarrow q, \quad \left\{ \begin{array}{l} v_n \rightarrow -v_n \\ B_n \rightarrow B_n \end{array} \right., \quad \left\{ \begin{array}{l} v_t \rightarrow v_t \\ B_t \rightarrow -B_t \end{array} \right.$$

- *periodic*: periodic.

- *shearingbox*: Shearingbox boundary conditions are similar to periodic, except that they are sheared in one direction (only *X1-beg* and *X1-end* support this type at this moment). This particular boundary condition can be used only if the ShearingBox module (described in §7.1) is enabled.

- *userdef*: user-supplied boundary conditions (it requires coding your own boundary conditions in the function **UserDefBoundary()** in *init.c*, §2.4.2).

Like the *[Grid]* block, you should include the  $x_3$  boundaries for 2D runs, even if they will not be considered.

### 2.3.6 The *[Static Grid Output]* Block

This block controls the output in the static grid version of the code. AMR output is controlled by another, similar block (see Chap. 9). Output files are written at specific times in a specific directory (local working directory by default) using different file formats, described in Chapter 8. The available fields are:

- **uservar** (*integer*) (*string1 string2 ...*)  
Defines supplementary variables to be written to disk in any of the format described below. The first integer represents the number of supplementary variables. When greater than zero, it must be followed by as many variable names separated by spaces, see Chapter 8.
- **output\_dir** (*string*)  
Sets the directory name for writing and reading simulation data. When writing, any of the data formats available below and the corresponding .out log files will be written in the directory specified by **output\_dir**. The *pluto.log* log file (only if *PRINT\_TO\_FILE* has been set to *YES*) will also be written to the same directory. When reading (during restarts), .dbl or .dbl.h5 files and the corresponding \*.out must be present in this directory or an error will occur.  
If **output\_dir** is not specified, the directory from which *pluto* is executed is assumed.
- **dbl** (*double*) (*integer/string*) (*string*)  
Assigns the output intervals for double precision (8 bytes) binary data. A negative value suppresses output with this format.
  - The first field (*double*) specifies the time interval (in code units) between consecutive outputs.

- The second field can be an *integer* giving the number of steps between consecutive outputs or a *string* giving the wall-clock time between consecutive outputs. A value, for instance, of *2.40h* tells **PLUTO** to write one **.dbl** file every two hours and 40 minutes. Negative values will be ignored for this control parameter.
- The last field (*string*) can be either *single\_file* (one single output file per time step containing all of the variables) or *multiple\_files* (different variables are written to different files).  
When asynchronous I/O is enabled (§2.2.1.1), a third option *single\_file\_async* is permitted for **.flt** or **.dbl** binary files to specify that asynchronous binary output has to be performed.

Double-precision format files can be used to restart the code using the `-restart n` command line argument.

- `flt (double) (integer/string) (string) [cgs]`  
like `dbl`, but for single-precision (4 bytes) data files. The last value (*cgs*) is optional and can be given to save datafiles directly in *cgs* physical units rather than in code units.
- `vtk (double) (integer/string) (string) [cgs]`  
like `flt`, but for VTK legacy file format, see §8.1.3.
- `dbl.h5 (double) (integer/string)`  
like `dbl`, but for `hdf5` double-precision format §8.1.2. This format can also be used for restarting the code by supplying the `-h5restart n` command line argument.
- `flt.h5 (double) (integer/string)`  
like `dbl` but for `hdf5` single-precision format §8.1.2;
- `tab (double) (integer/string)`  
sets the time and the number of steps interval for tabulated ascii format, §8.1.4;
- `ppm (double) (integer/string)`  
sets time and the number of step intervals for 2D color images in PPM format, §8.1.5;
- `png (double) (integer/string)`  
sets time and the number of step intervals for 2D color images in PNG format §8.1.5;
- `log (integer)`  
sets the interval (in number of steps) of the integration log to screen (or `pluto.log`).
- `analysis (double) (integer)`  
sets time and number of steps interval between consecutive calls to the function **Analysis()**, see 2.4.4.

### 2.3.7 The [Chombo HDF5 output] Block

Relevant only for AMR-Pluto with the Chombo library, see §9.4.

### 2.3.8 The [Parameters] Block

- `PAR_NAME_1 (double)`
- ...
- `PAR_NAME_n (double)`

User-defined parameter values are read at runtime in this section. The labels on the left identify the parameter *labels* (i.e. the corresponding indices of the array `g_inputParam`) while the (*double*) values on the right are the actual user-defined parameter values. The number of parameters specified in this section must exactly match the number and the order given in `definitions.h`

## 2.4 STEP # 4: Problem Configuration: init.c

The source file `init.c` provides a set of user-supplied functions that are used to define, set and configure your specific problem. These include:

- **Init ()** : sets initial conditions as functions of the spatial coordinates  $x_1, x_2, x_3$ ;
- **UserDefBoundary ()** : sets user-defined boundary conditions at the physical boundary sides of your computational domain if necessary (additional routines may be required, §3.2.4.3);
- **Analysis ()** : run-time data analysis and reduction;
- **BodyForceVector ()**, **BodyForcePotential ()** : defines the vector components of the acceleration vector and/or the gravitational potential.
- **BackgroundField ()** : sets a background, force-free magnetic field.

A template for all of them can be found in `Src/Templates/init.c`. In what follows we describe their prototypes.

### 2.4.1 Initial Conditions: the Init () function

The **Init ()** function is used to assign the initial condition as a function of the spatial coordinates.

Flow values are normally assigned in non-dimensional (or code) units by taking advantage of the fact that the HD or MHD equations are, in their simplest form, scale-invariant. Still, the non-dimensional form is preferred also in the general case in order to avoid the appearance of very large or very small values that may lead to arithmetic over- or underflows. Flow quantities can always be scaled down to physical CGS units by providing proper definition density, length and velocity scales, see §6.1.

Syntax:

```
void Init (double *v, double x1, double x2, double x3)
```

Arguments:

- **v**: a pointer to a vector of primitive quantities. A particular variable is located by means of an index:  $\rho = v[\text{RHO}]$ ,  $v_x = v[\text{VX1}]$ ,  $v_y = v[\text{VX2}]$  ... and so on. Although `VX1`, `VX2` and `VX3` can be used in any coordinate system, in order to avoid confusion, an alternative set may be adopted if the geometry is not Cartesian, see columns 2-4 in Table 2.4.

**Note:** PLUTO 3 Users: The old array indexing style using `DN`, `VX`, `VY` and `VZ`, etc... used in previous versions of the code can still be used for backward compatibility (but it is highly discouraged).

- **x1, x2, x3**: coordinates  $x_1, x_2, x_3$  of the computational cell where **v** is initialized;

Example:

The following code sets a disk with radius 1 centered around the origin in a 2D Cartesian domain. The flow is stationary and the disk has higher density and pressure ( $\rho = 10, p = 30$ ) with respect to the background state ( $\rho = 1, p = 1$ ):

```

void Init (double *v, double x1, double x2, double x3)
{
    double r;

    r = sqrt(x1*x1 + x2*x2);
    v[VX1] = v[VX2] = 0.0;
    if (r < 1.0){
        v[RHO] = 10.0;
        v[PRS] = 30.0;
    }else{
        v[RHO] = 1.0;
        v[PRS] = 1.0;
    }
}

```

With a small modification, the same initial condition can be written in a dimension-independent way (e.g. a line in 1D, a disk in 2D and a sphere in 3D):

```

void Init (double *v, double x1, double x2, double x3)
{
    double r2, r;

    r2 = EXPAND(x1*x1, + x2*x2, + x3*x3);
    r = sqrt(r2);
    EXPAND(v[VX1] = 0.0; ,
          v[VX2] = 0.0; ,
          v[VX3] = 0.0;)

    if (r < 1.0){
        v[RHO] = 10.0;
        v[PRS] = 30.0;
    }else{
        v[RHO] = 1.0;
        v[PRS] = 1.0;
    }
}

```

The macro **EXPAND(a,b,c)** allows to write component-independent code by conditionally compiling one, two or three lines (separated by commas) depending on the value taken by `COMPONENTS`. Function-like macro are documented in the file `macro.h` of the API reference guide, see `./Doc/Doxygen/html/macros_8h.html`.

Index	Cylindrical	Polar	Spherical	Quantity	Physics Module
RHO	-	-	-	(rest-mass) density	ALL
VX1	iVR	iVR	iVR	$x_1$ -velocity	ALL
VX2	iVZ	iVPHI	iVTH	$x_2$ -velocity	ALL
VX3	iVPHI	iVZ	iVPHI	$x_3$ -velocity	ALL
PRS	-	-	-	(thermal) pressure	ALL
BX1	iBR	iBR	iBR	$x_1$ cell-centered magnetic field	MHD, RMHD
BX2	iBZ	iBPHI	iBTH	$x_2$ cell-centered magnetic field	MHD, RMHD
BX3	iBPHI	iBZ	iBPHI	$x_3$ cell-centered magnetic field	MHD, RMHD
BX1s	iBRs	iBRs	iBRs	$x_1$ staggered magnetic field	MHD, RMHD
BX2s	iBZs	iBPHIs	iBTHs	$x_2$ staggered magnetic field	MHD, RMHD
BX3s	iBPHIs	iBZs	iBPHIs	$x_3$ staggered magnetic field	MHD, RMHD
TRC	-	-	-	tracer (passive scalar, $Q$ )	ALL

Table 2.4: Array indices used for labeling primitive variables. Staggered components (“s” suffix) are used only for magnetic fields in the boundary conditions, see §3.2.4.3.

### 2.4.1.1 Assigning Initial Conditions from Input Files

It is possible to assign initial conditions from user-supplied binary data by providing i) a grid data file and ii) a single raw binary file containing the variables to be read. The size, dimensions and even the geometry of the input grid may be different from the actual grid employed by PLUTO, as long as the coordinate transformation is supported. This provides a flexible and efficient tool to assign initial conditions by mapping data values originally defined on different computational domains. For instance, you can map a 2D spherical grid onto a 2D axisymmetric cylindrical domain, generate a 3D Cartesian domain by rotating any 2D axisymmetric data and so forth.

The module is initialized by calling the function **InputDataSet ()** which reads and stores input grid information such as size, number of variables, geometry and dimensions. This function should be called only once from your **Init ()** function:

```
InputDataSet (grid_file, input_var);
```

where the first argument `grid_file` is a string giving the name of the input grid file while `input_var` is an array of integers specifying which variables are contained in the input data file. The input grid file should be written using the same format employed by **PLUTO**, see §8.1.6.

After initialization, any subsequent call to

```
InputDataRead (data_file, string);
```

will read and store into memory the values of the variables contained in the input data file `data_file`. The second argument specifies the endianness of the input data files, i.e., `string="little", "big", " "`. An empty string does not change anything. Please note that, unless the input data file is changed, this function should also be called only once.

The data file should be written using binary format using either single or double precision with extensions `".flt"` (for the former) or `".dbl"` (for the latter). Variables should be stored sequentially and their order is specified by the elements of the array `input_var` until the value -1 is encountered. You may provide only some of the variables used by **PLUTO** and not necessarily all of them. The number of elements per variable should exactly match the number of grid points defined by the input grid.

Finally, the function **InputDataInterpolate ()** is used to map the values of the variables contained in the input binary data on the grid employed by PLUTO using bi- or tri-linear interpolation at the desired coordinate location:

```
InputDataInterpolate (v, x1, x2, x3);
```

where `v` is the same array of primitive variables used in the **Init ()** function and `x1, x2, x3` are the coordinates at which interpolates are required.

In the example below, density and velocity components are assigned from the input binary file `tmp/-data.0010.dbl` defined on the computational domain specified in `tmp/grid.out`:

```
void Init (double *v, double x1, double x2, double x3)
{
    static int first_call = 1;

    if (first_call){
        int k, input_var[256];
        for (k = 0; k < 256; k++) input_var[k] = -1;

        input_var[0] = RHO;
        input_var[1] = VX1;
        input_var[2] = VX2;
        input_var[3] = VX3;

        input_var[4] = -1;

        InputDataSet (".tmp/grid.out", input_var);
        InputDataRead (".tmp/data.0010.dbl");
        first_call = 0;
    }

    InputDataInterpolate(v, x1, x2, x3);
    .
    .
    .
}
```

Beware that interpolation is performed only on the variables specified by the array `input_var[]`. The remaining variables (if any) must still be set inside `Init()`.

**Note:** When the input geometry differs from the one used by **PLUTO**, vector components are *not* automatically transformed to the current geometry.

A configuration example may be found in the `TestProblems/HD/Blast/` directory, where the initial condition sets an isothermal blast wave propagating in a non-uniform density medium. The initial density distribution is created by the separate file `Turbulence.c` in the same directory and interpolated at runtime by **PLUTO** using the method outlined above.

**Note:** Staggered magnetic fields may not be assigned in this way since the divergence free condition is not necessarily maintained. Using the vector potential components is more advisable.

## 2.4.2 User-defined Boundary Conditions

The `UserDefBoundary()` function assigns user-defined boundary conditions to one or more physical boundaries of the computational domain (see Fig 2.7) only if one or more physical boundaries have been selected to be `userdef` inside your `pluto.ini`.

Alternatively, this function may also be used to control the solution array at the beginning of every time step inside the computational domain (set floor values, override the solution, etc...).

Syntax:

```
void UserDefBoundary (const Data *d, RBox *box, int side, Grid *grid)
```

Arguments:

- `*d`: a pointer to the **PLUTO** data structure, containing:
  - `d->Vc[nv][k][j][i]`: a four-index array of primitive variables defined at the cell center. The integer `nv=RHO, VX1, ..., NVAR-1` labels the variable (see Table 2.4), while `k, j` and `i` are the zone indices of the  $x_3, x_2$  and  $x_1$  direction (note the reversed order), respectively.
  - `d->Vs[nv][k][j][i]` (staggered MHD only): a four-index array containing the three components of the staggered magnetic field (`BX1s, BX2s, BX3s`, if any) defined at zone faces, see Fig 2.7. These components only exists in the MHD or RMHD modules when using the Constrained Transport algorithm to control the  $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{B} = 0$  condition, see §3.2.4.3 for more details.

**Important:** Face-centered (staggered) magnetic fields and cell-centered fluid variables are defined on different zone stencils, see Figure 2.7. The zone-centering and the corresponding index range is encoded in the `box` structure (see below).

All variables must be assigned at a user-defined boundary with the exception of the staggered component of magnetic field normal to the interface if you are using the Constrained Transport (CT) method, see §3.2.4.3.

- `*box`: a pointer to a `RBox` structure, defining the rectangular portion of the domain over which ghost zone values should be assigned. Since cell-centered and face-centered data are defined on different `box` structures, its usage is mainly intended to
  - discriminate between cell-centered variables and face-centered variables using the structure member `box->vpos` which specifies the location of the variable inside the cell (`=CENTER, X1FACE, X2FACE, X3FACE`);
  - provide an efficient way of looping through the ghost boundary zones using the macro `BOX_LOOP(box, k, j, i)` which automatically takes care of the index range of definition.



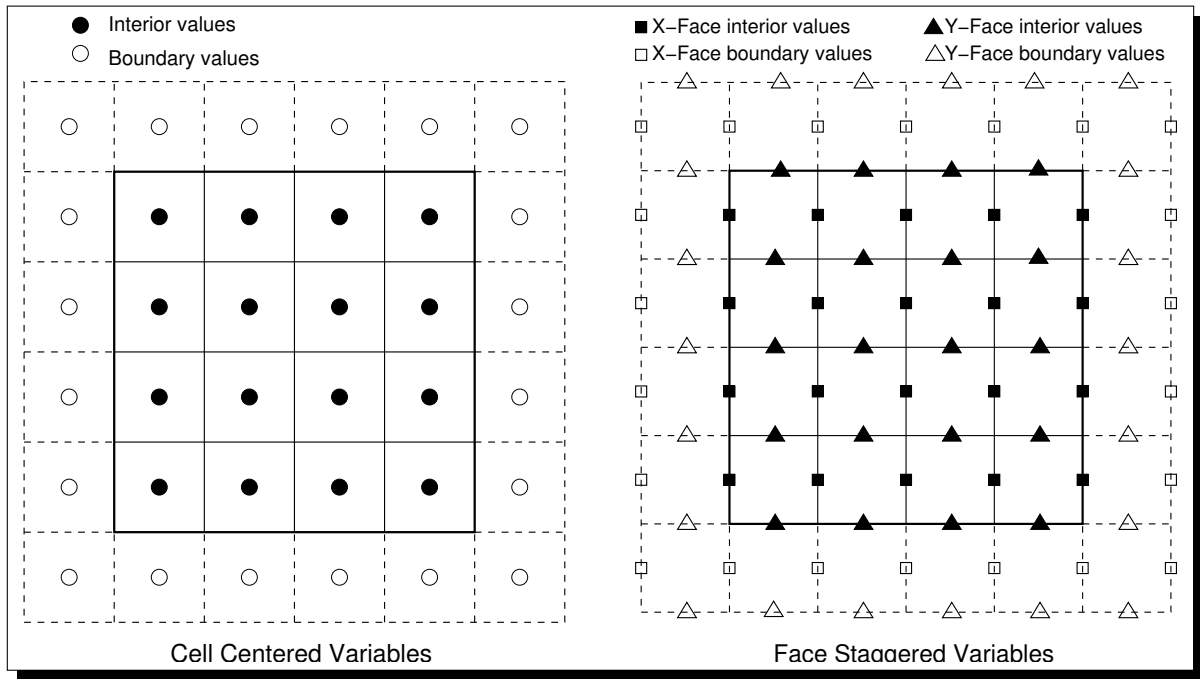


Figure 2.7: Schematic representation of cell-centered (left panel) and face-centered (right panel) collocation of physical variables on a 2D grid. X and Y-face centered staggered quantities are shown by squares and triangles, respectively. Filled symbols (circles, boxes and triangles) are considered interior values part of the solution, whereas boundary values are identified by empty symbols and must be prescribed by the user if the boundary is `userdef`.

**Note:** Using the `box` structure is not strictly mandatory and the usual macros `X1_BEG_LOOP()`, ..., `X3_END_LOOP()` may still be employed without any modifications. However, these macros perform loops over cell-centered data stencils and staggered field are not completely defined since the loops do not include one row of zones at the furthest left edges of the boundary zones. On the contrary, the `BOX_LOOP()` macro takes into account the full range of definition of the variable and should be used whenever possible.

- `side`: an input integer label specifying on which side of the physical domain user-defined values should be prescribed. It can take on the following values:
  - `X1_BEG`, `X1_END`: boundary conditions can be assigned in the ghost zones at the beginning and end of the physical domain in the  $x_1$  direction
  - `X2_BEG`, `X2_END`: boundary conditions can be assigned in the ghost zones at the beginning and end of the physical domain in the  $x_2$  direction
  - `X3_BEG`, `X3_END`: boundary conditions can be assigned in the ghost zones at the beginning and end of the physical domain in the  $x_3$  direction
  - 0 (zero): change/control the solution inside the computational domain. This feature can be used *only* if the macro `INTERNAL_BOUNDARY` has been enabled in your `definitions.h`, see §2.4.2.1.

If, say, `X1-beg` has been tagged `userdef` inside your `pluto.ini`, the user has to specify the boundary values at the beginning of the  $x_1$  direction when `side==X1_BEG`.

- `*grid`: a pointer to an array of `Grid` structures containing all the relevant grid information. In this case, `grid[IDIR]` is the structure relevant to the  $x_1$  direction, `grid[JDIR]` to the  $x_2$  direction and `grid[KDIR]` pertains to the  $x_3$  direction. See the code documentation for more details on the members of the `Grid` structure.

**Example #1:**

As a first example we show how to prescribe a fixed inflow boundary condition for a jet model. The computational domain is a 2D box in cylindrical geometry, so that  $x_1 \equiv R$ ,  $x_2 \equiv z$ . A constant inflow is prescribed at the jet nozzle located at the  $z = 0$  boundary for  $R \leq 1$  while reflective boundary conditions are assigned for  $R > 1$ . The inflow values are specified as

$$\begin{pmatrix} \rho \\ v_R \\ v_z \\ p \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ M \\ 1/\Gamma \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{for } R \leq 1, \quad \begin{pmatrix} \rho(R, -z) \\ v_R(R, -z) \\ v_z(R, -z) \\ p(R, -z) \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \rho(R, z) \\ v_R(R, z) \\ -v_z(R, z) \\ p(R, z) \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{for } R > 1$$

where  $M$  is the Mach number.

```
void UserDefBoundary (const Data *d, RBox *box, int side, Grid *grid)
{
    int i, j, k, nv;
    double *x1, *x2, *x3;

    x1 = grid[IDIR].x; /* -- array pointer to x1 coordinate -- */
    x2 = grid[JDIR].x; /* -- array pointer to x2 coordinate -- */
    x3 = grid[KDIR].x; /* -- array pointer to x3 coordinate -- */

    if (side == X2_BEG) { /* -- select the boundary side -- */
        BOX_LOOP(box, k, j, i) { /* -- Loop over boundary zones -- */
            if (x1[i] <= 1.0) { /* -- set jet values for r <= 1 -- */
                d->Vc[RHO][k][j][i] = 1.0;
                d->Vc[iVR][k][j][i] = 0.0;
                d->Vc[iVZ][k][j][i] = g_inputParam[MACH];
                d->Vc[PRS][k][j][i] = 1.0/gmm;
            } else { /* -- reflective boundary for r > 1 -- */
                d->Vc[RHO][k][j][i] = d->Vc[RHO][k][2*JBEG - j - 1][i];
                d->Vc[iVR][k][j][i] = d->Vc[iVR][k][2*JBEG - j - 1][i];
                d->Vc[iVZ][k][j][i] = -d->Vc[iVZ][k][2*JBEG - j - 1][i];
                d->Vc[PRS][k][j][i] = d->Vc[PRS][k][2*JBEG - j - 1][i];
            }
        }
    }
}
```

The previous piece of code is executed *only* if you have selected *userdef* at the *X2-beg* boundary inside your *pluto.ini*.

The macro **BOX\_LOOP**(*box, k, j, i*) performs a loop over the bottom boundary zones and, for cell-centered data, it is equivalent to the macro **X2\_BEG\_LOOP**(*k, j, i*). Similar macros may be used at any of the other boundaries (*X1\_BEG*, *X1\_END*, *X2\_END*, *X3\_BEG*, *X3\_END*), although the **BOX\_LOOP**() macro has the advantage of being more general since it automatically embeds the stencil index range for the corresponding variable position (i.e. centered or staggered).

**Example #2:**

As a second example, we discuss the user-defined boundary condition employed in the shock-cloud problem (Test\_Problems/MHD/Shock.Cloud/). Here we want to prescribe, at the X1-end boundary, constant pre-shock values on both cell-centered quantities and staggered magnetic fields. The variable `box->vpos` is used to select the desired data set.

```
void UserDefBoundary (const Data *d, RBox *box, int side, Grid *grid)
{
    int i, j, k;

    if (side == X1_END){
        /* -- select the boundary side -- */
        if (box->vpos == CENTER){
            /* -- select the variable position -- */
            BOX_LOOP(box,k,j,i){
                /* -- Loop over boundary zones -- */
                d->Vc[RHO][k][j][i] = 1.0;
                EXPAND(d->Vc[VX1][k][j][i] = -11.2536; ,
                    d->Vc[VX2][k][j][i] = 0.0; ,
                    d->Vc[VX3][k][j][i] = 0.0;);
                d->Vc[PRS][k][j][i] = 1.0;
                EXPAND(d->Vc[BX1][k][j][i] = 0.0; ,
                    d->Vc[BX2][k][j][i] = g_inputParam[B_PRE]; ,
                    d->Vc[BX3][k][j][i] = g_inputParam[B_PRE];)
            }
        }
        else if (box->vpos == X2FACE){ /* -- y staggered field -- */
            #ifdef STAGGERED_MHD
            BOX_LOOP(box,k,j,i) d->Vs[BX2s][k][j][i] = g_inputParam[B_PRE];
            #endif
        }
        else if (box->vpos == X3FACE){ /* -- z staggered field -- */
            #ifdef STAGGERED_MHD
            BOX_LOOP(box,k,j,i) d->Vs[BX3s][k][j][i] = g_inputParam[B_PRE];
            #endif
        }
    }
}
```

As in the previous example, the macro `BOX_LOOP()` is interchangeable, for cell-centered data (`box->vpos == CENTER`), with the macro `X1_END_LOOP(k, j, i)` but not rigorously for staggered magnetic fields which are defined on a larger stencil.

Function-like macros are described in the code documentation: `./Doc/Doxygen/html/macros_8h.html`

**2.4.2.1 Internal Boundary**

When `UserDefBoundary()` is called with `side==0` and `INTERNAL_BOUNDARY` has been turned to `YES` inside your `definitions.h`, the user has full control over the solution array. This feature can be used to adjust the value of selected cell-centered primitive variables inside a specific region of the computational domain rather than at boundaries. In this case, the `TOT_LOOP()` macro should be employed to loop over the (local) computational domain and a user-defined criterion (typically spatially- or variable-dependent) is used to modify the solution array in the selected zones.

A typical example may occur when a lower (or upper) threshold value should be imposed on physical variables such as density, pressure or temperature. For instance, the following piece of code sets a floor value of  $10^{-3}$  on density:

```
void UserDefBoundary (const Data *d, RBox *box, int side, Grid *grid)
{
    int i, j, k;

    if (side == 0){
        TOT_LOOP(k,j,i){
            if (d->Vc[RHO][k][j][i] < 1.e-3) {
                d->Vc[RHO][k][j][i] = 1.e-3;
            }
        }
    }
    ...
}
```

A more complex example consists of a time-independent region of space where variables are fixed in time and should not be evolved by the algorithm. If this is the case, you may additionally tell `PLUTO` not to update the solution in the specified computational zones during the current time step by enabling the `FLAG_INTERNAL_BOUNDARY` flag.

Example:

The following example (taken from `Test_Problems/HD/Stellar_Wind`) shows how to set up a radially symmetric spherical wind in cylindrical coordinates inside a small spherical region of radius 1 centered around the origin. This is achieved by prescribing fixed inflow values for density, pressure and velocity:

```
void UserDefBoundary (const Data *d, RBox *box, int side, Grid *grid)
{
    int i, j, k, nv;
    double *x1, *x2, *x3;
    double r, r0, cs;
    double Vwind = 1.0, rho, vr;

    x1 = grid[IDIR].xgc;
    x2 = grid[JDIR].xgc;
    x3 = grid[KDIR].xgc;

    if (side == 0) {
        r0 = 1.0;
        cs = g_inputParam[CS_WIND];
        TOT_LOOP(k, j, i) {
            r = sqrt(x1[i]*x1[i] + x2[j]*x2[j]);
            if (r <= r0) {
                vr = tanh(r/r0/0.1)*Vwind;
                rho = Vwind*r0*r0/(vr*r*r);
                d->Vc[RHO][k][j][i] = rho;
                d->Vc[VX1][k][j][i] = Vwind*x1[i]/r;
                d->Vc[VX2][k][j][i] = Vwind*x2[j]/r;
                d->Vc[PRS][k][j][i] = cs*cs/g_gamma*pow(rho, g_gamma);
                d->flag[k][j][i] |= FLAG_INTERNAL_BOUNDARY;
            }
        }
    }
    ...
}
```

The symbol `|=` (a combination of the bitwise OR operator `|` followed by the equal sign) turns the `FLAG_INTERNAL_BOUNDARY` bit on in the 3D array `d->flag[][][]`. This is used by the code to reset the right hand side of the conservative equations in the selected zones to zero. These computational cells are thus not evolved in time by **PLUTO**.

**Note:** The `*box` structure should not be used here and staggered magnetic field variables should not be altered.

### 2.4.3 Body Forces

Body forces are introduced by enabling the `BODY_FORCE` flag in your `definitions.h`. The force is computed in terms of the acceleration vector  $\mathbf{a}$ :

$$\mathbf{a} = -\nabla\Phi + \mathbf{g}, \quad (2.3)$$

where  $\Phi$  is the scalar potential and  $\mathbf{g} = (g_1, g_2, g_3)$  is a three-component acceleration vector.

- The scalar potential can be employed when the `BODY_FORCE` flag is set to `POTENTIAL` in your `definitions.h`. In this case,  $\mathbf{g} = 0$  and the function `BodyForcePotential()` should be used to prescribe the analytical form of  $\Phi \equiv \Phi(x_1, x_2, x_3)$ :

```
double BodyForcePotential(double x1, double x2, double x3)
```

where `x1, x2, x3` are the local zone coordinates and the return value of the function gives the potential. In this way, **PLUTO** employs a conservative discretization that conserves total energy+gravitational energy, see Eq. (3.1) and Eq. (3.7). The gravitational potential, however, must not change in time.

As an example, a spherically symmetric point-mass potential  $\Phi = -1/r$  can be defined using

```
double BodyForcePotential(double x1, double x2, double x3)
{
    #if GEOMETRY == CARTESIAN
        return -1.0/sqrt(x1*x1 + x2*x2 + x3*x3);
    #elif GEOMETRY == CYLINDRICAL
        return -1.0/sqrt(x1*x1 + x2*x2);
    #elif GEOMETRY == SPHERICAL
        return -1.0/x1;
    #endif
}
```

for the three coordinate systems.

- The acceleration vector can be employed when the `BODY_FORCE` flag is set to `VECTOR` and the three components of  $g$  are prescribed using the function `BodyForceVector()`:

```
void BodyForceVector(double *v, double *g,
                    double x1, double x2, double x3)
```

where

- `*v`: a pointer to a vector of primitive quantities (e.g., `v[RHO]`, `v[VX1]`, etc...);
- `*g`: a three-component array (`g[IDIR]`, `g[JDIR]`, `g[KDIR]`) specifying the gravity vector  $g$  components along the coordinate directions;
- `x1`, `x2`, `x3`: local zone coordinates.

As an example, let's consider again a point-mass source located at the origin of coordinates. Then one needs to define, depending on the geometry (= `CARTESIAN`, `CYLINDRICAL` or `SPHERICAL`),

```
void BodyForceVector(double *v, double *g, double x1, double x2, double x3)
{
    double gs, rs;

    #if GEOMETRY == CARTESIAN
        rs = sqrt(x1*x1 + x2*x2 + x3*x3); /* spherical radius in cart. coords */
    #elif GEOMETRY == CYLINDRICAL
        rs = sqrt(x1*x1 + x2*x2); /* spherical radius in cyl. coords */
    #elif GEOMETRY == SPHERICAL
        rs = x1; /* spherical radius in sph. coords */
    #endif

    gs = -1.0/rs/rs; /* spherical gravity */

    #if GEOMETRY == CARTESIAN
        g[IDIR] = gs*x1/rs;
        g[JDIR] = gs*x2/rs;
        g[KDIR] = gs*x3/rs;
    #elif GEOMETRY == CYLINDRICAL
        g[IDIR] = gs*x1/rs;
        g[JDIR] = gs*x2/rs;
        g[KDIR] = 0.0;
    #elif GEOMETRY == SPHERICAL
        g[IDIR] = gs;
        g[JDIR] = 0.0;
        g[KDIR] = 0.0;
    #endif
}
```

It is also possible to prescribe the body force in terms of a vector *and* a potential by setting, in your definitions.h, `BODY_FORCE` to `(VECTOR+POTENTIAL)`.

Beware that non-inertial effects due to a rotating frame of reference (such as Coriolis and centrifugal forces) should *not* be specified here since they are automatically handled by **PLUTO** by enabling the `ROTATING_FRAME` flag in the HD and MHD module, see §3.1.2.

A word of caution about using reflective, equatorial symmetric (or similar) boundary conditions: strictly speaking, gravity should be defined consistently with the antisymmetric behavior of the velocity component normal to the given boundary plane. More precisely, the normal component of  $g$  should

be antisymmetric while the potential should be an even function about the boundary plane. Consider, for instance, a reflective (or equatorial symmetric) conditions at the lower and upper boundaries  $z_b$  and  $z_e$  in the  $z$  direction. Then one should have:

$$\begin{cases} g_z(x, y, z_b - z) = -g_z(x, y, z_b + z) \\ \Phi(x, y, z_b - z) = \Phi(x, y, z_b + z) \end{cases}, \quad \begin{cases} g_z(x, y, z_e + z) = -g_z(x, y, z_e - z) \\ \Phi(x, y, z_e + z) = \Phi(x, y, z_e - z) \end{cases}$$

If gravity does not satisfy this property then it must be imposed manually. As an example you can look at the `Test_Problems/MHD/Rayleigh_Taylor` or `Test_Problems/MHD/Shearing_Box` setups where reflective and equatorial symmetric boundaries are used in the  $y$ - and  $z$ - directions.

**Note: Relativistic flows:** Body force are only partially compatible with the relativistic modules. Only *VECTOR* may be used.

#### 2.4.4 The `Analysis()` function

The `Analysis()` function can be used to perform run-time data analysis/reduction in order to save intensive I/O for data post-processing. This function call frequency is set in `pluto.ini`, see §2.3.6.

Syntax:

```
void Analysis (const Data *d, Grid *grid)
```

Arguments:

- `*d` a pointer to the **PLUTO** data structure as in §2.4.2
- `*grid`: a pointer to an array of `Grid` structures containing all the relevant grid information.

Example:

In the next example we show how to compute, at run-time, the total integrated kinetic energy and the maximum internal energy:

$$\langle E_{\text{kin}} \rangle = \frac{1}{\Delta V} \int \frac{1}{2} \rho v^2 dx dy dz = \frac{1}{\Delta V} \sum_{i,j,k} \frac{1}{2} \rho_{i,j,k} v_{i,j,k}^2 \quad (\rho e)_{\text{max}} = \max_{i,j,k} \left( \frac{p}{\Gamma - 1} \right)$$

where  $(i, j, k)$  extend over the entire computational domain (a Cartesian 3D domain is used for simplicity). The output file name is `averages.dat` and it is written as a 4-column tabulated ascii file containing the current integration time, the time step, the volume-integrated kinetic energy and maximum internal energy for the required time level. The example works also for parallel computations and can be safely used at restart since the last position of the file is automatically searched for and subsequent writing is appended starting from the correct row.

```

void Analysis (const Data *d, Grid *grid)
{
    int    i, j, k;
    double dV, vol, scrh;
    double Ekin, Eth_max, vx2, vy2, vz2;
    double *dx, *dy, *dz;

    /* ---- Set pointer shortcuts ---- */

    dx = grid[IDIR].dx;
    dy = grid[JDIR].dx;
    dz = grid[KDIR].dx;

    /* ---- Main loop ---- */

    Ekin = Eth_max = 0.0;
    DOM_LOOP(k,j,i){
        dV = dx[i]*dy[j]*dz[k]; /* Cell volume (Cartesian coordinates) */

        vx2 = d->Vc[VX1][k][j][i]*d->Vc[VX1][k][j][i]; /* x-velocity squared */
        vy2 = d->Vc[VX2][k][j][i]*d->Vc[VX2][k][j][i]; /* y-velocity squared */
        vz2 = d->Vc[VX3][k][j][i]*d->Vc[VX3][k][j][i]; /* z-velocity squared */

        scrh    = 0.5*d->Vc[RHO][k][j][i]*(vx2 + vy2 + vz2); /* cell kinetic energy */
        Ekin    += scrh*dV;

        scrh    = d->Vc[PRS][k][j][i]/(g_gamma - 1.0); /* cell internal energy */
        Eth_max = MAX(Eth_max, scrh);
    }

    vol = g_domEnd[IDIR] - g_domBeg[IDIR]; /* Compute total domain volume */
    vol *= g_domEnd[JDIR] - g_domBeg[JDIR];
    vol *= g_domEnd[KDIR] - g_domBeg[KDIR];

    Ekin /= vol; /* Compute kinetic energy average */

    /* ---- Parallel data reduction ---- */

    #ifdef PARALLEL
    MPI_Allreduce (&Ekin, &scrh, 1, MPI_DOUBLE, MPI_SUM, MPI_COMM_WORLD);
    Ekin = scrh;

    MPI_Allreduce (&Eth_max, &scrh, 1, MPI_DOUBLE, MPI_MAX, MPI_COMM_WORLD);
    Eth_max = scrh;

    MPI_Barrier (MPI_COMM_WORLD);
    #endif

    /* ---- Write ascii file "averages.dat" to disk ---- */

    if (prank == 0){
        char *dir, fname[512];
        static double tpos = -1.0;
        FILE *fp;

        dir = GetOutputDir(); /* Output directory */
        sprintf (fname,"%s/averages.dat",dir);
        if (g_stepNumber == 0){ /* Open for writing only when we're starting */
            fp = fopen(fname,"w"); /* from beginning */
            fprintf (fp,"#%7s%12s%12s%12s\n", "t", "dt", "<Ekin>", "Max(Eth)");
        }else{ /* Append if this is not step 0 */
            if (tpos < 0.0){ /* Obtain time coordinate of to last written row */
                char sline[512];
                fp = fopen(fname,"r");
                while (fgets(sline, 512, fp)) {}
                sscanf(sline, "%lf\n",&tpos); /* tpos = time of the last written row */
                fclose(fp);
            }
            fp = fopen(fname,"a");
        }
        if (g_time > tpos){ /* Write if current time if > tpos */
            fprintf (fp, "%12.6e%12.6e%12.6e%12.6e\n",g_time, g_dt,Ekin, Eth_max);
        }
        fclose(fp);
    }
}

```

## 3. Basic Physics Modules

In this chapter we describe the basic equation modules available in the **PLUTO** code for the solution of the fluid equations under different regimes: HydroDynamics (HD), MagnetoHydroDynamics (MHD) and their relativistic extensions (RHD and RMHD).

We remind that only first-order spatial derivatives accounting for the hyperbolic part of the equations are described in this chapter whereas the reader is referred to Chap. 5 for a comprehensive description of the diffusion terms (thermal conduction, viscosity and magnetic resistivity) and cooling.

### 3.1 The HD Module

The HD module implements and solves the Euler or Navier-Stokes equations of classical fluid dynamics. The relevant source files and definitions for this module can be found in the `Src/HD` directory.

#### 3.1.1 Equations

With the HD module, **PLUTO** evolves in time following system of conservation laws:

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \begin{pmatrix} \rho \\ \mathbf{m} \\ E + \rho\Phi \end{pmatrix} + \nabla \cdot \begin{pmatrix} \rho\mathbf{v} \\ \mathbf{m}\mathbf{v} + p\mathbf{I} \\ (E + p + \rho\Phi)\mathbf{v} \end{pmatrix}^T = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -\rho\nabla\Phi + \rho\mathbf{g} \\ \mathbf{m} \cdot \mathbf{g} \end{pmatrix} \quad (3.1)$$

where  $\rho$  is the mass density,  $\mathbf{m} = \rho\mathbf{v}$  is the momentum density,  $\mathbf{v}$  is the velocity,  $p$  is the thermal pressure and  $E$  is the total energy density:

$$E = \rho e + \frac{\mathbf{m}^2}{2\rho}. \quad (3.2)$$

An equation of state provides the closure  $\rho e = \rho e(p, \rho)$ .

The source term on the right includes contributions from body forces and is written in terms of the (time-independent) gravitational potential  $\Phi$  and the acceleration vector  $\mathbf{g}$  (§2.4.3).

The right hand side of the system of Eqns (3.1) is implemented in the **RightHandSide()** function inside `Src/HD/rhs.c` employing a conservative discretization that closely follows the expression given in §A.1.1, §A.1.2 and §A.1.3 for Cartesian, polar and spherical geometries (without magnetic fields).

Primitive variables are defined by  $\mathbf{V} = (\rho, \mathbf{v}, p)^T$ , where  $\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{m}/\rho$  while  $p = p(\rho, \rho e)$  depends on the equation of state, see Chapter 4. The maps  $\mathbf{U}(\mathbf{V})$  and its inverse are provided by the functions **PrimToCons()** and **ConstToPrim()**.

Primitive variables are generally more convenient and preferred when assigning initial/boundary conditions and in the interpolation algorithms. The vector of primitive quantities  $\mathbf{V}$  obeys the quasi-linear form of the equations:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} + \mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla \rho + \rho \nabla \cdot \mathbf{v} &= 0 \\ \frac{\partial \mathbf{v}}{\partial t} + \mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla \mathbf{v} + \frac{\nabla p}{\rho} &= -\nabla \Phi + \mathbf{g} \\ \frac{\partial p}{\partial t} + \mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla p + \rho c_s^2 \nabla \cdot \mathbf{v} &= 0, \end{aligned} \quad (3.3)$$

where  $c_s = \sqrt{\Gamma p / \rho}$  is the adiabatic speed of sound for an ideal EOS. The quasi-linear form (3.3) is required during the predictor stage when `TIME_EVOLUTION` has been set to either `CHARACTERISTIC_TRACING` or `HANCOCK` and is implemented in the `Src/HD/prim_eqn.c` source file.



### 3.1.2 Available Options

The HD sub-menu available with the Python script allows to enable some additional features for this module:

- **EOS**  
select the Equation of State (EOS), see Chapter 4. Possible values are *ISOTHERMAL*, *IDEAL* and *PVTE\_LAW*.
- **ENTROPY\_SWITCH** (*YES/NO*)  
By enabling this switch (only for the *IDEAL* EOS), the equation of conserved entropy is added to the system of conservation laws:

$$\frac{\partial(\rho s)}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot (\rho s \mathbf{v}) = 0 \quad (3.4)$$

where  $s = p/\rho^\Gamma$  is the entropy variable for the *IDEAL* EOS. Equations (3.4) is solved by treating entropy as a passive scalar. At the end of the integration step, gas pressure is recovered from either total energy or conserved entropy, according to the control strategy specified in `Src/entropy_switch.c` which, by default, uses entropy everywhere except at shocks. In other words, if a zone has been flagged with `FLAG_ENTROPY` (by default away from shocks), then  $p = p(s)$  and total energy is recomputed using this new value of pressure. Otherwise,  $p = p(E)$  and entropy is recomputed using the new pressure value. Note that by enabling this mixed evolution, neither the total energy nor the entropy will generally be conserved at the numerical level. Also, beware that in the current code release, the `ENTROPY_SWITCH` is not compatible if used in conjunction with diffusion operators.

- **THERMAL\_CONDUCTION**  
include thermal conduction effects, see §5.3. The available options are
  - *NO*: thermal conduction is not included;
  - *EXPLICIT*: thermal conduction is treated explicitly, §5.4.1;
  - *SUPER\_TIME\_STEPPING*: thermal conduction is treated using super-time-stepping, §5.4.2.
- **VISCOSITY**  
include viscous terms, see §5.1. Options are
  - *NO*: viscous terms are not included;
  - *EXPLICIT*: viscosity is treated explicitly, §5.4.1;
  - *SUPER\_TIME\_STEPPING*: viscosity is treated using super-time-stepping, §5.4.2.

See §5.1 for details.

- **ROTATING\_FRAME** (*YES/NO*)  
Solves the equations in a frame of reference rotating with constant angular velocity  $\Omega_z$  around the vertical polar axis  $z$ . This feature should be enabled only when `GEOMETRY` is one of *CYLINDRICAL*, *POLAR* or *SPHERICAL*. The value of  $\Omega_z$  is specified using the global variable `g_OmegaZ` inside your **Init()** function. The discretization of the angular momentum and energy equations is then done in a conservative fashion [26, 34]. For example, in polar geometry, we solve

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial}{\partial t}(\rho v_R) + \nabla \cdot (\rho v_R \mathbf{v}) + \frac{\partial p}{\partial R} &= \frac{\rho(v_\phi + w)^2}{R} \\ \frac{\partial}{\partial t}[R\rho(v_\phi + w_z)] + \nabla \cdot [R\rho(v_\phi + w)\mathbf{v}] + \frac{\partial p}{\partial \phi} &= 0 \\ \frac{\partial}{\partial t}\left(E + \frac{w_z^2}{2}\rho + w\rho v_\phi\right) + \nabla \cdot \left[\mathbf{F}_E + \frac{w^2}{2}\rho\mathbf{v} + w\rho v_\phi\mathbf{v}\right] &= 0 \end{aligned} \quad (3.5)$$

where  $w = R\Omega_z$ ,  $R$  is the cylindrical radius and  $\mathbf{F}_E$  is the standard energy flux and body force terms have been omitted only for the sake of exposition.

Note that the source term in the radial component of the momentum equation implicitly contains the Coriolis force and centrifugal terms:

$$\frac{\rho(v_\phi + w)^2}{R} = \frac{\rho v_\phi^2}{R} + 2\rho v_\phi \Omega_z + \rho \Omega_z^2 R \quad (3.6)$$

On the other hand, the azimuthal component of the Coriolis force has been incorporated directly into the fluxes using the conservation form. An example of such a configuration in polar or spherical geometry may be found in the directory `Test_Problems/HD/Disk_Planet`.

## 3.2 The MHD Module

The MHD module is suitable for the solution of ideal or resistive (non-relativistic) magnetohydrodynamical equations. Source and definition files are located inside the Src/MHD directory.

### 3.2.1 Equations

With the MHD module, **PLUTO** solves the following system of conservation laws:

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \begin{pmatrix} \rho \\ \mathbf{m} \\ E + \rho\Phi \\ \mathbf{B} \end{pmatrix} + \nabla \cdot \begin{pmatrix} \rho\mathbf{v} \\ \mathbf{m}\mathbf{v} - \mathbf{B}\mathbf{B} + p_t \\ (E + p_t + \rho\Phi)\mathbf{v} - \mathbf{B}(\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{B}) \\ \mathbf{v}\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{B}\mathbf{v} \end{pmatrix}^T = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -\rho\nabla\Phi + \rho\mathbf{g} \\ \mathbf{m} \cdot \mathbf{g} \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad (3.7)$$

where  $\rho$  is the mass density,  $\mathbf{m} = \rho\mathbf{v}$  is the momentum density,  $\mathbf{v}$  is the velocity,  $p_t = p + \mathbf{B}^2/2$  is the total pressure (thermal + magnetic),  $\mathbf{B}$  is the magnetic field<sup>1</sup> and  $E$  is the total energy density:

$$E = \rho e + \frac{\mathbf{m}^2}{2\rho} + \frac{\mathbf{B}^2}{2}. \quad (3.8)$$

where an additional equation of state provides the closure  $\rho e = \rho e(p, \rho)$  (see Chapter 4). The source term on the right includes contributions from body forces and is written in terms of the (time-independent) gravitational potential  $\Phi$  and the acceleration vector  $\mathbf{g}$  (§2.4.3).

Note that the induction equation may equivalently be written as

$$\frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial t} + \nabla \times \mathcal{E} = 0, \quad (3.9)$$

where  $\mathcal{E} = -\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{B}$  is the electric field.

The right hand side of the system of Eqns (3.7) is implemented in the **RightHandSide()** function inside Src/MHD/rhs.c employing a conservative discretization that closely follows the expression given in §A.1.1, §A.1.2 and §A.1.3 for Cartesian, polar and spherical geometries.

The sets of conservative and primitive variables  $\mathbf{U}$  and  $\mathbf{V}$  are given by:

$$\mathbf{U} = (\rho, \mathbf{m}, E, \mathbf{B})^T, \quad \mathbf{V} = (\rho, \mathbf{v}, p, \mathbf{B})^T.$$

The maps  $\mathbf{U}(\mathbf{V})$  and its inverse are provided by the functions **PrimToCons()** and **ConsToPrim()**.

The primitive form of the equations is

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} + \mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla \rho + \rho \nabla \cdot \mathbf{v} &= 0 \\ \frac{\partial \mathbf{v}}{\partial t} + \mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla \mathbf{v} + \frac{1}{\rho} \mathbf{B} \times (\nabla \times \mathbf{B}) + \frac{1}{\rho} \nabla p &= -\nabla \Phi + \mathbf{g} \\ \frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial t} + \mathbf{B}(\nabla \cdot \mathbf{v}) - (\mathbf{B} \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{v} + (\mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{B} &= \mathbf{v}(\nabla \cdot \mathbf{B}) \\ \frac{\partial p}{\partial t} + \mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla p + \rho c_s^2 \nabla \cdot \mathbf{v} &= 0, \end{aligned} \quad (3.10)$$

where the  $(\nabla \cdot \mathbf{B})$  on the right hand side of the third equation is kept for reasons of convenience, although zero at the continuous level.

---

<sup>1</sup>A factor of  $1/\sqrt{4\pi}$  has been absorbed in the definition of magnetic field.

### 3.2.2 Available Options

When setting a typical MHD problem with Python, a second menu should follow up. This menu allows one to choose:

- `EOS`  
Select the equation of state. Options are the same as the HD module (§3.1.2). Possible values are *ISOTHERMAL*, *IDEAL*, *PVTE\_LAW*.
- `ENTROPY_SWITCH` (*YES/NO*)  
Solve the entropy equation (only for *IDEAL* EOS) in addition to the total energy equation in the same way as done for the HD module, §3.1.2.
- `MHD_FORMULATION`  
Select a strategy to enforce the  $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{B} = 0$  constraint<sup>2</sup>. Possible values are
  - *NONE*  
divergence constraint is not controlled by any algorithm. Recommended for one-dimensional problems or 2D configurations with purely azimuthal fields.
  - *EIGHT\_WAVES*  
magnetic fields retain a cell average representation and the eight wave formulation introduced by Powell [42] is used, see §3.2.4.1;
  - *DIV\_CLEANING*  
magnetic fields retain a cell average representation and the mixed hyperbolic/parabolic divergence cleaning technique of [15, 38] is used, see §3.2.4.2. A new scalar variable, the generalized Lagrange multiplier  $\psi$  (*PSI\_GLM*) is introduced.
  - *CONSTRAINED\_TRANSPORT*  
the magnetic field has a staggered representation and the constrained transport is used, see §3.2.4.3.
- `BACKGROUND_FIELD` (*YES/NO*)  
Split the magnetic field into a static contribution and a time dependent deviation, see §3.2.5 for how to use this feature.
- `RESISTIVE_MHD`  
Include resistive terms in the MHD equations, see §5.2. The available options are
  - *NO*: resistivity is not included;
  - *EXPLICIT*: resistivity is included explicitly, §5.4.1;
  - *SUPER\_TIME\_STEPPING*: resistivity is treated using super-time-stepping, §5.4.2.
- `THERMAL_CONDUCTION`  
Include anisotropic thermal conduction flux, see §5.3. Options are the same as for the HD module, §3.1.2.
- `VISCOSITY`:  
Include viscosity terms in the MHD equations, §5.1. Options are the same as for the HD module, §3.1.2.
- `ROTATING_FRAME` (*YES/NO*)  
Solves the equations in a rotating frame, see the HD module §3.1.2.

---

<sup>2</sup>Numerical methods do not naturally preserve the condition  $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{B} = 0$ .

### 3.2.3 Assigning Magnetic Field Components

Magnetic field components are initialized in your `Init()` function just like any other flow quantity. Depending on the value of `ASSIGN_VECTOR_POTENTIAL` in your `definitions.h`, two alternative initializations are possible:

1. By setting `ASSIGN_VECTOR_POTENTIAL` to `NO`, you can assign the component of magnetic field in the usual way by directly prescribing the values for `us[BX1]`, `us[BX2]` and `us[BX3]`.
2. When `ASSIGN_VECTOR_POTENTIAL` is set to `YES`, the vector potential  $\mathbf{A}$  is used instead and the magnetic field is recovered from  $\mathbf{B} = \nabla \times \mathbf{A}$ . This option guarantees that the initial field has zero divergence in the discretization which is more appropriate for the underlying formulation (i.e., cell or face centered fields, §3.2.4).

**Note:** In 2D, only the third component of  $\mathbf{A}$  (that is `us[AX3]`) should be used. Likewise, the third component of the magnetic field ( $B_z$ ) cannot be assigned through the vector potential and must be prescribed in the standard way, see the third example in Table 3.1.

Table 3.1 shows some examples of magnetic field initializations with and without using the vector potential.

Magnetic Field	Standard	Using Vector Potential
$\mathbf{B} = (0, 5, 0)$ Cartesian, 2D	<pre>us[BX1] = 0.0; us[BX2] = 5.0; us[BX3] = 0.0;</pre>	<pre>us[AX1] = 0.0; us[AX2] = 0.0; us[AX3] = -x1*5.0;</pre>
$\mathbf{B} = (0, 5, 0)$ Cylindrical, 2D	<pre>us[BX1] = 0.0; us[BX2] = 5.0; us[BX3] = 0.0;</pre>	<pre>us[AX1] = 0.0; us[AX2] = 0.0; us[AX3] = 0.5*x1*5.0;</pre>
$\mathbf{B} = (-\sin y, \sin 2x, 2)$ Cartesian, 2.5D	<pre>us[BX1] = -sin(x2); us[BX2] = sin(2.0*x1); us[BX3] = 2.0;</pre>	<pre>us[AX1] = 0.0; us[AX2] = 0.0; us[AX3] = cos(x2)+0.5*cos(2.0*x1); us[BX3] = 2.0;</pre>

**Table 3.1:** Examples of how the magnetic field may be initialized. Direct initialization (standard) is possible when `ASSIGN_VECTOR_POTENTIAL` is set to `NO`. Otherwise, the components of the vector potential are used (third column).

### 3.2.4 Controlling the $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{B} = 0$ Condition

#### 3.2.4.1 Eight-Wave Formulation

In the eight-wave formalism [42, 44] magnetic fields have a cell-centered representation. Additional source terms are added on the right hand side of Eqns (3.7):

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \begin{pmatrix} \rho \\ \mathbf{m} \\ E \\ \mathbf{B} \end{pmatrix} + \dots = -\nabla \cdot \mathbf{B} \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ \mathbf{B} \\ \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{B} \\ \mathbf{v} \end{pmatrix}$$

Contributions to  $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{B}$  are taken direction by direction. Note that the 8-wave formulation keeps  $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{B} = 0$  only at the truncation level and NOT to machine accuracy. More accurate treatments of the solenoidal condition can be achieved using the other two formulations. The 8-wave formulation should be used in conjunction any Riemann solver with the exception of *hlld*.

#### 3.2.4.2 Hyperbolic Divergence Cleaning (GLM and EGLM)

In [15] (see also [37, 38] for additional discussion), the divergence free constraint is enforced by solving a modified system of conservation laws, where the induction equation is coupled to a generalized Lagrange multiplier (GLM). Using the mixed GLM hyperbolic/parabolic correction, the induction equation and the solenoidal constraint are replaced, respectively, by

$$\frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot (\mathbf{v} \mathbf{B} - \mathbf{B} \mathbf{v}) + \nabla \psi = 0, \quad \frac{\partial \psi}{\partial t} + c_h^2 \nabla \cdot \mathbf{B} = -\frac{c_h^2}{c_p^2} \psi, \quad (3.11)$$

where  $c_h = \text{CFL} \times \Delta l_{\min} / \Delta t^n$  is maximum speed compatible with the step size,  $c_p = \sqrt{\Delta l_{\min} c_h / \alpha}$  and  $\Delta l_{\min}$  is the minimum cell length. The free parameter  $\alpha$ , [37], controls the rate at which monopole are damped and has a default value 0.1. It can be easily modified by introducing the user-defined parameter `ALPHA_GLM`, §2.1, or by directly editing `Src/MHD/GLM/glm_solve.c`. A number of tests suggests that the optimal range can be found for  $0.05 \lesssim \alpha \lesssim 0.3$ . In the mixed formulation, divergence errors are transported to the domain boundaries with the maximal admissible speed and are damped at the same time. By default,  $\psi$  is set to zero in the initial and boundary conditions but the user is free to change it at a user-defined boundary by prescribing `d→VC[PSI_GLM][k][j][i]` (inside `UserDefBoundary()`) which has the usual cell-centered representation. The scalar multiplier is not written to disk except for the double format, §8, needed for restart.

The advantage of this formulation (GLM-MHD) is that the equations retain a conservative form (no source terms are introduced), all variables (including magnetic fields) retain a cell-centered representation and standard 7-wave Riemann solvers (with a single value of the normal component of magnetic field) may be used.

A slightly different formulation (EGLM-MHD), breaking momentum and energy conservation, has been found to be more robust in problems involving strongly magnetized media (see, for example, configuration # 11 in `TestProblems/MHD/Blast`). The EGLM form of the equations [15, 37] can be enabled by adding the user-defined constant `EGLM` to `definitions.h` and setting its value to `YES` from the Python script. For a complete description of the GLM- and EGLM-MHD formulation and its implementation in `PLUTO` refer to [37, 38].

### 3.2.4.3 Constrained Transport (CT)

In this formulation [4, 24, 17], two sets of magnetic fields are used:

- face-centered magnetic field ( $\mathbf{b}$  hereafter);
- cell-centered magnetic field ( $\mathbf{B}$  hereafter).

The primary set is the first one, where the three components of the field are located at different spatial points in the control volume, that is

$$b_{x_1, i+\frac{1}{2}, j, k} \quad , \quad b_{x_2, i, j+\frac{1}{2}, k} \quad , \quad b_{x_3, i, j, k+\frac{1}{2}}$$

see Fig. 3.1. In Cartesian coordinates, for instance,  $b_x$  is located at X-faces whereas  $b_y$  lives at Y-faces, etc., see the boxes and triangles in Fig. 2.7. *This feature must be used only in conjunction with an unsplit integrator.* With CT, the solenoidal condition is maintained at machine accuracy as long as field initialization is done using the vector potential, §3.2.3.

The staggered magnetic field is treated as an area-weighted average on the zone face and Stoke's theorem is used to update it:

$$\int \left( \frac{\partial \mathbf{b}}{\partial t} + \nabla \times \boldsymbol{\mathcal{E}} \right) \cdot d\mathbf{S}_d = 0 \quad \implies \quad \frac{db_{x_d}}{dt} + \frac{1}{S_d} \oint \boldsymbol{\mathcal{E}} \cdot d\mathbf{l} = 0 \quad (3.12)$$

Please note that the staggered components are initialized and integrated also on the boundary interfaces in the corresponding staggered direction. In other words, the interior values are

$$\begin{aligned} b_{x_1, i+\frac{1}{2}, j, k} : & \begin{cases} \text{IBEG} - 1 & \leq i \leq \text{IEND} \\ \text{JBEG} & \leq j \leq \text{JEND} \\ \text{KBEG} & \leq k \leq \text{KEND} \end{cases} \\ b_{x_2, i, j+\frac{1}{2}, k} : & \begin{cases} \text{IBEG} & \leq i \leq \text{IEND} \\ \text{JBEG} - 1 & \leq j \leq \text{JEND} \\ \text{KBEG} & \leq k \leq \text{KEND} \end{cases} \\ b_{x_3, i, j, k+\frac{1}{2}} : & \begin{cases} \text{IBEG} & \leq i \leq \text{IEND} \\ \text{JBEG} & \leq j \leq \text{JEND} \\ \text{KBEG} - 1 & \leq k \leq \text{KEND} \end{cases} \end{aligned}$$

Thus  $b_{x_1, i+\frac{1}{2}, j, k}$  is NOT a boundary value for  $i = \text{IBEG} - 1$ ,  $\text{JBEG} \leq j \leq \text{JEND}$ ,  $\text{KBEG} \leq k \leq \text{KEND}$  but it is considered part of the solution !! Similar considerations hold for  $b_{x_2}$  and  $b_{x_3}$  components at the  $x_2$  and  $x_3$  boundaries, respectively.

The electromotive force (EMF)  $\boldsymbol{\mathcal{E}}$  is computed at zone edges, see Fig. 3.1 by a proper averaging/reconstruction scheme (set by `CT_EMF_AVERAGE` inside your `definitions.h`). Options are:

- `CT_EMF_AVERAGE = ARITHMETIC` yields a simple arithmetic averaging [4] of the fluxes computed during the upwind steps. In this case, one has available

$$\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -\mathcal{E}_{x_3} \\ \mathcal{E}_{x_2} \end{pmatrix}_{i+\frac{1}{2}, j, k}, \quad \begin{pmatrix} \mathcal{E}_{x_3} \\ 0 \\ -\mathcal{E}_{x_1} \end{pmatrix}_{i, j+\frac{1}{2}, k}, \quad \begin{pmatrix} -\mathcal{E}_{x_2} \\ \mathcal{E}_{x_1} \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}_{i, j, k+\frac{1}{2}}$$

during the  $x_1$ ,  $x_2$  and  $x_3$  sweeps, respectively. The arithmetic average follows:

$$\mathcal{E}_{x_1, i, j+\frac{1}{2}, k+\frac{1}{2}} = \frac{1}{4} \left( \mathcal{E}_{x_1, j, k+\frac{1}{2}} + \mathcal{E}_{x_1, i, j+1, k+\frac{1}{2}} + \mathcal{E}_{x_1, i, j+\frac{1}{2}, k} + \mathcal{E}_{x_1, i, j+\frac{1}{2}, k+1} \right)$$

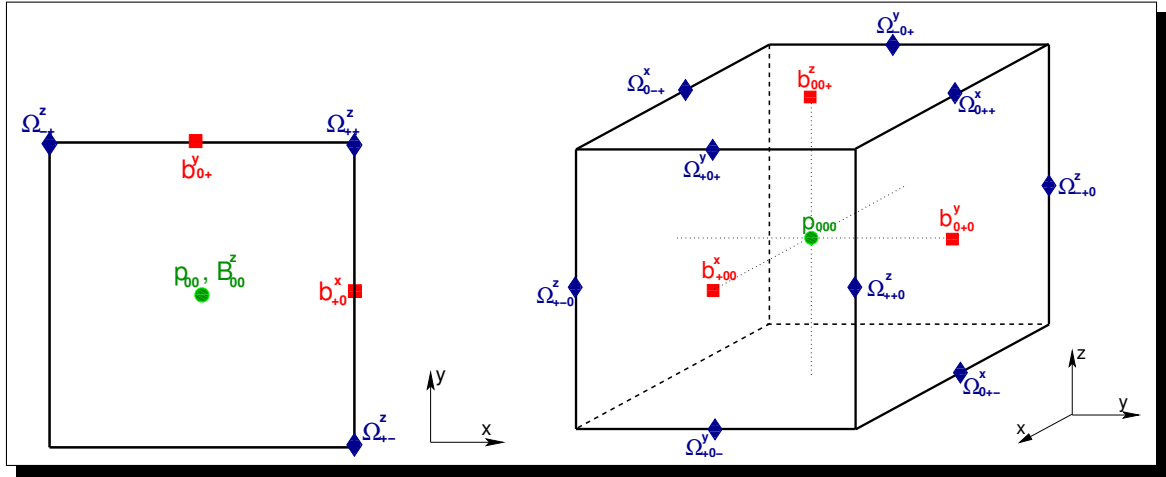


Figure 3.1: Collocation points in 2.x D (left) and in 3D (right). Cell-centered quantities are given as green circles, face-centered as red squares and edge-centered as blue diamonds.

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{E}_{x_2, i+\frac{1}{2}, j, k+\frac{1}{2}} &= \frac{1}{4} \left( \mathcal{E}_{x_2, i+\frac{1}{2}, j, k} + \mathcal{E}_{x_2, i+\frac{1}{2}, j, k+1} + \mathcal{E}_{x_2, i, j, k+\frac{1}{2}} + \mathcal{E}_{x_2, i+1, j, k+\frac{1}{2}} \right) \\ \mathcal{E}_{x_3, i+\frac{1}{2}, j+\frac{1}{2}, k} &= \frac{1}{4} \left( \mathcal{E}_{x_3, i+\frac{1}{2}, j, k} + \mathcal{E}_{x_3, i+\frac{1}{2}, j+1, k} + \mathcal{E}_{x_3, i, j+\frac{1}{2}, k} + \mathcal{E}_{x_3, i+1, j+\frac{1}{2}, k} \right)\end{aligned}$$

Although being the simplest one, this average procedure may suffer from insufficient dissipation in some circumstances ([17, 24]) and does not reduce to its one dimensional equivalent algorithm for plane parallel grid aligned flows.

- `CT.EMF.AVERAGE = UCT.HLL` uses a two dimensional Riemann solver based on a four-state HLL flux function, see [60, 24]. If the fully unsplit `HANCOCK` or `CHARACTERISTIC.TRACING` scheme is used, the Courant number must be  $CFL \lesssim 0.7$  (in 2D) and  $CFL \lesssim 0.35$  (in 3D).
- `CT.EMF.AVERAGE = UCT0` or `CT.EMF.AVERAGE = UCT.CONTACT` employs the face-to-edge integration procedures proposed by [17], where electromotive force derivatives are averaged from neighbor zones (`UCT0`) or selected according to the sign of the contact mode (`UCT.CONTACT`). The former has reduced dissipation and is preferably used with linear interpolants and RK integrators, while the latter shows better dissipation properties.

All algorithms, with the exception of the arithmetic averaging, reduce to the corresponding one dimensional scheme for grid aligned flows. However, in our experience, `UCT.HLL` and `UCT.CONTACT` show the best dissipation and stability properties. The CT formulation works with any of the Riemann solvers.

**Assigning Boundary Conditions.** Within the CT framework, user-defined boundary conditions (b.c.) must be assigned on the staggered components as well. This is done in your `UserDefBoundary()` function using the `d→Vs[nv][k][j][i]` array, where `nv` gives the staggered component: `BX1s`, `BX2s` or `BX3s`.

**Note:** In **PLUTO** we follow the convention that the cell “center” owns its right interface, e.g., ‘i’ means  $i + \frac{1}{2}$ . Thus:

$$\begin{aligned}b_{x_1, i+\frac{1}{2}, j, k} &\equiv \text{d}\rightarrow\text{Vs}[\text{BX1s}][k][j][i]; \\ b_{x_2, i, j+\frac{1}{2}, k} &\equiv \text{d}\rightarrow\text{Vs}[\text{BX2s}][k][j][i]; \\ b_{x_3, i, j, k+\frac{1}{2}} &\equiv \text{d}\rightarrow\text{Vs}[\text{BX3s}][k][j][i];\end{aligned}$$



Beware that the three staggered components have *different spatial locations* and the `BOX_LOOP()` macro introduced in §2.4.2 automatically implements the correct loop over the boundary ghost zones. Thus, at the  $x_1$  boundary, for instance, one needs to assign

$$\left. \begin{array}{ll} b_{x_2, i, j + \frac{1}{2}, k} & \text{at } x_1, i, x_2, j + \frac{1}{2}, x_3, k \\ b_{x_3, i, j, k + \frac{1}{2}} & \text{at } x_1, i, x_2, j, x_3, k + \frac{1}{2} \end{array} \right\} \quad \text{for } i = 0, \dots, \text{IBEG}-1$$

The component normal to the interface ( $b_{x_1}$  in this case) should *NOT* be assigned since it is automatically computed by **PLUTO** from the  $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{B} = 0$  condition after the tangential components have been set.

Example:

The following example prescribes user-defined boundary conditions at the lower  $x_2$  boundary for a MHD jet problem in cylindrical coordinates ( $x_1 \equiv R, x_2 \equiv z$ ). Inflow conditions are given as  $(\rho, v_R, v_z, p, B_r, B_z) = (1, 0, 10, 1/\Gamma, 0, 3)$  for  $R \leq 1$  while a symmetric counter-jet is assumed for  $R > 1$ :

```
if (side == X2_BEG){
    JETVAL(vjet);          /* -- beam/jet values -- */
    R = grid[IDIR].x;      /* -- cylindrical radius -- */

    if (box->vpos == CENTER){ /* -- select cell-centered variables only -- */
        BOX_LOOP(box, k, j, i){ /* -- loop on boundary zones -- */
            for (nv = 0; nv < NVAR; nv++){ vout[nv] = d->Vc[nv][k][2*JBEG-j-1][i];
            vout[VX2] *= -1.0;
            #if PHYSICS == MHD
                vout[BX1] *= -1.0;
            #endif
            for (nv = 0; nv < NVAR; nv++){ /* -- smooth out the two solutions -- */
                d->Vc[nv][k][j][i] = vout[nv] + (vjet[nv] - vout[nv])*Profile(R[i],nv);
            }
        }
    } else if (box->vpos == X1FACE){ /* -- select x1-staggered component -- */
        #ifdef STAGGERED_MHD
            Rp = grid[IDIR].A;          /* -- right interface area -- */
            BOX_LOOP(box, k, j, i){
                bxsout = -d->Vs[BX1s][k][2*JBEG-j-1][i];
                d->Vs[BX1s][k][j][i] = bxsout*(1.0 - Profile(rp[i],BX));
            }
        #endif
    }
}
```

Here `STAGGERED_MHD` is defined only in the MHD constrained transport and the boundary conditions are assigned on  $b_{x_1} \equiv b_R$  only (i.e. the orthogonal component).

### 3.2.5 Background Field Splitting

In situations where an intrinsic background magnetic field is present (e.g. planetary magnetosphere, stellar dipole fields), it may be convenient to write the total magnetic field as  $\mathbf{B}(x, t) = \mathbf{B}_0(x) + \mathbf{B}_1(x, t)$  where  $\mathbf{B}_0$  is a background curl-free magnetic field and  $\mathbf{B}_1(x, t)$  is a deviation. The background field must satisfy the following conditions:

$$\frac{\partial \mathbf{B}_0}{\partial t} = 0, \quad \nabla \cdot \mathbf{B}_0 = 0, \quad \nabla \times \mathbf{B}_0 = 0.$$

In this case one can show [42] that the MHD equations reduce to:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot (\rho \mathbf{v}) &= 0 \\ \frac{\partial \mathbf{m}}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot (\mathbf{m} \mathbf{v} - \mathbf{B}_1 \mathbf{B} - \mathbf{B}_0 \mathbf{B}_1) + \nabla p_t &= \rho(-\nabla \Phi + \mathbf{g}) \\ \frac{\partial (E_1 + \rho \Phi)}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot [(E_1 + p_t + \rho \Phi) \mathbf{v} - (\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{B}_1) \mathbf{B}] &= \mathbf{m} \cdot \mathbf{g} \\ \frac{\partial \mathbf{B}_1}{\partial t} - \nabla \times (\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{B}) &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

where

$$p_t = p + \frac{B_1^2}{2} + \mathbf{B}_1 \cdot \mathbf{B}_0, \quad E_1 = \frac{p}{\Gamma - 1} + \frac{1}{2} (\rho v^2 + B_1^2)$$

Thus the energy depends only on  $B_1$ , a feature that turns out to be useful when dealing with low-beta plasma. The sets of conservative and primitive variables are the same as the original ones, with  $\mathbf{B} \rightarrow \mathbf{B}_1$ ,  $E \rightarrow E_1$ .

In order to enable this feature, the macro `BACKGROUND_FIELD` must be turned to `YES` in your `definitions.h`. The initial and boundary conditions must be imposed on  $B_1$  alone while the function `BackgroundField()` can be added to your `init.c` to assign  $B_0$ :

```
void BackgroundField (double x1, double x2, double x3, double *B0)
```

Examples can be found in the 4<sup>th</sup> configuration of `Test.Problems/MHD/Rotor/` and in the 4<sup>th</sup> or 5<sup>th</sup> configurations of `Test.Problems/MHD/Blast/`.

**Note:** Background field splitting works, at present, with the CT and GLM divergence cleaning techniques, with most Riemann solvers but only with RK-type integrators.

### 3.3 The RHD Module

The RHD module implements the equations of special relativistic fluid dynamics in 1, 2 or 3 dimensions. Velocities are always assumed to be expressed in units of the speed of light. The special relativistic module comes with 2 different equations of state, and it also works in curvilinear coordinates. Gravity in Newtonian approximation can also be incorporated. The relevant source files and definitions for this module can be found in the Src/RHD directory.

#### 3.3.1 Equations

The special relativistic module evolves the conservative set  $\mathbf{U}$  of state variables

$$\mathbf{U} = \left( D, m_1, m_2, m_3, E \right)^T$$

where  $D$  is the laboratory density,  $m_{x1,x2,x3}$  are the momentum components,  $E$  is the total energy (including contribution from the rest mass). The evolutionary conservative equations are

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \begin{pmatrix} D \\ \mathbf{m} \\ E \end{pmatrix} + \nabla \cdot \begin{pmatrix} D\mathbf{v} \\ \mathbf{mv} + p\mathbf{l} \\ \mathbf{m} \end{pmatrix} = \mathbf{0}$$

where  $\mathbf{v}$  is the velocity,  $p$  is the thermal pressure. The relativistic module is designed with 2 sets of primitive quantities,  $\mathbf{V}_v$  and  $\mathbf{V}_U$ . The first set,  $\mathbf{V}_v$ , includes the rest-mass density  $\rho$ , three-velocity  $\mathbf{v} = (v_{x1}, v_{x2}, v_{x3})$  and pressure  $p$ , whereas the second one replaces the ordinary velocity with the four-velocity:

$$\mathbf{V}_v = \left( \rho, v_{x1}, v_{x2}, v_{x3}, p \right)^T, \quad \mathbf{V}_U = \left( \rho, u_{x1}, u_{x2}, u_{x3}, p \right)^T$$

The Lorentz factor  $\gamma$  is readily computed as:

$$\gamma = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 - \mathbf{v}^2}} = \sqrt{1 + \mathbf{u}^2}$$

Using the four-velocity in place of the three-velocity offers in some circumstances the advantage that the total velocity  $|\mathbf{v}| = |\mathbf{u}|/\sqrt{1 + \mathbf{u}^2}$  is always less than 1 by construction, for any  $0 \leq |\mathbf{u}| < \infty$ . This is not always the case when the three-velocity is used and precautionary measures are used to ensure that  $|\mathbf{v}| < 1$ . The relation between  $\mathbf{U}$  and  $\mathbf{V}$  is more complicated and is expressed by

$$D = \rho\gamma, \quad \mathbf{m} = \rho h \gamma^2 \mathbf{v} = \rho h \gamma \mathbf{u}, \quad E = \rho h \gamma^2 - p$$

where  $h$  is the specific enthalpy (see §3.3.2 for available equation of states).

In order to express the equations in primitive (quasi-linear) form, one assumes  $\delta p = c_s^2 \delta e$ , where  $c_s$  is the adiabatic speed of sound:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} + \mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla \rho - \frac{1}{c_s^2 h} \mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla p &= \frac{1}{c_s^2 h} \frac{\partial p}{\partial t} \\ \frac{\partial \mathbf{v}}{\partial t} + \mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla \mathbf{v} + \frac{1}{\rho h \gamma^2} \nabla p &= -\frac{\mathbf{v}}{\rho h \gamma^2} \frac{\partial p}{\partial t} + \mathbf{a} \\ \frac{\partial p}{\partial t} + \frac{1}{1 - \mathbf{v}^2 c_s^2} \left[ c_s^2 \rho h \nabla \cdot \mathbf{v} + (1 - c_s^2) \mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla p \right] &= 0. \end{aligned} \tag{3.13}$$

For more detailed expressions and the characteristic decomposition, see [30].

### 3.3.2 Available options

The RHD sub-menu allows to change the following switches:

- EOS  
select the equation of state, Ch. 4. Possible values are *IDEAL* or *TAUB*.
- USE\_FOUR\_VELOCITY (*YES/NO*)  
Use the four-velocity  $\mathbf{u} = \gamma \mathbf{v}$  instead of the three velocity in the primitive set of variables. Notice that initial and boundary conditions must be given using the four velocity  $\mathbf{u}$  and NOT  $\mathbf{v}$ .
- ENTROPY\_SWITCH (*YES/NO*)  
Replace the total energy equation with the entropy equation away from shocks. This feature is implemented in the same way as for the HD and MHD modules, see §3.1.2.

### 3.4 The RMHD Module

The RMHD module implements the equations of special relativistic magnetohydrodynamics in 1, 2 or 3 dimensions. Velocities are always assumed to be expressed in units of the speed of light. Source and definition files are located inside the Src/RMHD directory.

#### 3.4.1 Equations

The RMHD module solves the following system of conservation laws:

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \begin{pmatrix} D \\ \mathbf{m} \\ E \\ \mathbf{B} \end{pmatrix} + \nabla \cdot \begin{pmatrix} D\mathbf{v} \\ w_t\gamma^2\mathbf{v}\mathbf{v} - \mathbf{b}\mathbf{b} + p_t \\ \mathbf{m} \\ \mathbf{v}\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{B}\mathbf{v} \end{pmatrix}^T = \mathbf{0} \quad (3.14)$$

where  $D$  is the laboratory density,  $\mathbf{m}$  is the momentum density,  $E$  is the total energy (including contribution from the rest mass):

$$\begin{aligned} D &= \gamma\rho \\ \mathbf{m} &= w_t\gamma^2\mathbf{v} - b^0\mathbf{b} \\ E &= w_t\gamma^2 - b^0b^0 - p_t \end{aligned}, \quad \begin{cases} b^0 = \gamma\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{B} \\ \mathbf{b} = \mathbf{B}/\gamma + \gamma(\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{B})\mathbf{v} \\ w_t = \rho h + \mathbf{B}^2/\gamma^2 + (\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{B})^2 \\ p_t = p + \frac{\mathbf{B}^2/\gamma^2 + (\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{B})^2}{2} \end{cases}$$

Notice that the components of the momentum tensor may also be written as:

$$M^{ij} = w_t u^i u^j - b^i b^j = m^i v^j - \frac{b^i B^j}{\gamma} = m^i v^j - \left( \frac{B^i}{\gamma^2} + v^i \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{B} \right) B^j$$

The RMHD module is designed with one set of primitive quantities,  $\mathbf{V} = (\rho, \mathbf{v}, p, \mathbf{B})$ . The quasi-linear form of the RMHD is not available yet and algorithms using the characteristic decomposition of the equations or the quasi-linear form are not available. Therefore, the *CHARACTERISTIC.TRACING* step cannot be used and the *HANCOCK* scheme works by default using the conservative predictor step rather than the primitive one. On the other hand, Runge-Kutta type integrators works well for the RMHD module.

The available equations of state are *IDEAL* and *TAUB* already introduced for the RHD module (see [35] for the extension of this EOS to the RMHD equations).

#### 3.4.2 Available Options

The RMHD sub-menu offers some of the switches already discussed in the MHD module (§3.2.2) or in the RHD (§3.3.2) module. Divergence control is achieved using the same algorithms introduced for MHD, namely: 8-wave (§3.2.4.1), divergence cleaning (§3.2.4.2) and the constrained transport (§3.2.4.3).

## 4. Equation of State

PLUTO can describe a thermally ideal gas obeying the *thermal* Equation of State (EOS)

$$p = nk_B T = \frac{\rho}{m_u \mu} k_B T \quad (4.1)$$

where  $p$  is the pressure,  $n$  is the total particle number density,  $k_B$  is the Boltzmann constant,  $T$  is the temperature,  $\rho$  is the density,  $m_u$  is the atomic mass unit and  $\mu$  is the mean molecular weight. The thermal EOS describes the thermodynamic state of a plasma in terms of its pressure  $p$ , density  $\rho$ , temperature  $T$  and chemical composition  $\mu$ . Eq. (4.1) is written in CGS physical units. Using code units for  $p$  and  $\rho$  while leaving temperature in Kelvin, the thermal EOS is conveniently re-expressed as

$$p = \frac{\rho T}{\mathcal{K} \mu} \quad \Longleftrightarrow \quad T = \frac{p}{\rho} \mathcal{K} \mu \quad (4.2)$$

where  $\mathcal{K}$  is the **KELVIN** macro which depends explicitly on the value of `UNIT_VELOCITY`.

Another fundamental quantity is the (specific) internal energy  $e$  whose rate of change under a physical process is regulated by the first law of thermodynamics:

$$de = dQ - pd \left( \frac{1}{\rho} \right). \quad (4.3)$$

where  $Q$  represents the heat absorbed or released. The internal energy is a state function of the system and can also be related to temperature and density via the *caloric* equation of state [55]

$$e = e(T, \rho). \quad (4.4)$$

The *thermal* and *caloric* equations of state given by Eq. (4.2) and (4.4) constitutes the basis for the consideration discussed in the next sections.

### 4.1 The *ISOTHERMAL* Equation of State

In an isothermal gas, the temperature is constant and the pressure is readily obtained as

$$p = \rho c_{\text{iso}}^2 \quad (4.5)$$

where  $c_{\text{iso}}$  (the isothermal sound speed) can be either a constant value or a spatially-varying quantity. This EOS is available only in the HD and MHD modules. No energy equation is present and the labels `ENG` and `PRS` are undefined.

The value of  $c_{\text{iso}}$  can be set using the global variable `g_isoSoundSpeed` in your `init.c`, e.g.

```
g_isoSoundSpeed = 2.0; /* sets the sound speed to be 2 */
```

If not set, the default value is  $c_{\text{iso}} = 1$ .

In order to have a space-dependent isothermal speed of sound, one has to copy the source file `Sr-c/HD/eos.c` to your local working directory and make the appropriate modification.

### 4.2 The *IDEAL* Equation of State

For a calorically ideal gas, the ratio of specific heats  $\Gamma$  is constant and the internal energy can be written

$$\rho e = \frac{p}{\Gamma - 1}. \quad (4.6)$$

The value of  $\Gamma$  is stored in the global variable `g_gamma` and can be modified in your **Init()** function (default value 5/3).

For a relativistic flow, the constant- $\Gamma$  EOS is more conveniently expressed through the specific enthalpy:

$$\rho h = \rho + \frac{\Gamma}{\Gamma - 1} p. \quad (4.7)$$

The ideal EOS is compatible with all physics modules, algorithms and Riemann solvers in the code.

### 4.3 The *PVTE\_LAW* Equation of State

The PVTE (Pressure-Volume-Temperature-Energy) EOS allows the user to specify the internal energy as a general function of the temperature  $T$  and chemical fractions (or concentrations)  $\mathbf{X}$ .

The thermal EOS (4.1) together with the caloric EOS (4.4) link the five quantities  $p$ ,  $\rho$ ,  $T$ ,  $\mathbf{X}$  and  $e$  and are used by the code to compute two of them given the remaining three:

$$\begin{cases} p &= \frac{\rho}{\mu(\mathbf{X})m_u} k_B T \\ e &= e(T, \mathbf{X}) \end{cases} \quad (4.8)$$

where  $m_u$  is the atomic mass unit and  $\mu(\mathbf{X})$ , the mean molecular weight, depends on the gas composition. The *PVTE\_LAW* EOS allows the user to provide explicit definitions for  $\mu(\mathbf{X})$  and  $e(T, \mathbf{X})$  in a thermodynamically consistent way<sup>1</sup>.

The implementation of this EOS depends on how chemical fractions are computed and a major distinction should be made between non-equilibrium and equilibrium cases:

- *Non equilibrium case*: a chemical network is used to evolve  $\mathbf{X}(t)$  through rate equations under non-equilibrium conditions, see §6. This occurs, for example, when this EOS is used in conjunction with a cooling module that includes a time-dependent reaction network. In this case, species are evolved independently and their value is at disposal when performing conversion between pressure, temperature and internal energy. In particular, recovering temperature from internal energy,  $T = T(e, \mathbf{X})$  requires inverting a nonlinear equation by means of an iterative root finder.
- *Equilibrium case*: there's no chemical network and fractions are not evolved independently but are computed when necessary using some sort of equilibrium assumptions such as Saha (LTE, valid in the high density limit) or collisional-ionization equilibrium (CIE, valid at low densities). This corresponds to express fractions as  $\mathbf{X} = \mathbf{X}(T, \rho)$  so that quantities depending on  $\mathbf{X}$  become functions of  $(T, \rho)$ . For example, the thermal EOS becomes  $p = p(\rho, T)$  while internal energy becomes a function of two variables,  $e = e(T, \rho)$ . In this case, the inverse functions  $T = T(p, \rho)$  and  $T = T(e, \rho)$  are computed by finding the roots of nonlinear equations.

The implementation of the *PVTE\_LAW* EOS can be found in the `Src/EOS/PVTE` directory. The source file `pvtelaw.c` (or `pvtelaw.template.c` if you are starting from scratch) provides the interface between the user implementation and the module through the following functions:

- **InternalEnergyFunc()**: compute and return the internal energy density  $\rho e$  where  $e \equiv e(T, \mathbf{X})$  in non-equilibrium chemistry or  $e \equiv e(T, \rho)$  in the equilibrium case;
- **GetMu()**: compute the mean molecular weight  $\mu = \mu(\mathbf{X})$  or  $\mu(T, \rho)$ .
- **Gamma1()**: compute the value of the first adiabatic index,

$$\Gamma_1 = \frac{1}{c_V} \frac{p}{\rho T} \chi_T^2 + \chi_\rho^2 \quad \text{where} \quad \begin{cases} \chi_T = \left( \frac{\partial \log p}{\partial \log T} \right)_\rho = 1 - \frac{\partial \log \mu}{\partial \log T} \\ \chi_\rho = \left( \frac{\partial \log p}{\partial \log \rho} \right)_T = 1 - \frac{\partial \log \mu}{\partial \log \rho} \end{cases} \quad (4.9)$$

<sup>1</sup>For a thermally ideal gas, it can be shown that the specific internal energy  $e$  is a function of the temperature  $T$  and chemical composition  $\mathbf{X}$ . Also,  $e(T)$  must be monotonically increasing.

needed to evaluate the sound speed,  $c_s = \sqrt{\Gamma_1 p / \rho}$ . Note that  $\Gamma_1$  has the upper bound of 5/3 and may not be straightforward to compute. Fortunately, its value is only needed to estimate the wave propagation speed during the Riemann solver and an approximate value should suffice.

Two different implementations are provided with the current distribution: `pvte.law.H+.c` is suitable for a partially hydrogen gas in LTE (described in the next section) while `pvte.law.dAngelo.c` can be used for molecular and atomic hydrogen cooling as in D'Angelo, G. et al ApJ (2013) 778. More technical details can be found under the `Src/EOS/PVTE` folder in the API reference guide or following this link.

**Note:** The `PVTE_LAW` EOS is not compatible with algorithms requiring characteristic decomposition and cannot be used with the `ENTROPY_SWITCH`. We suggest to use RK time-stepping and the `tvdlf`, `hll` or `hllc` Riemann solvers. This EOS is, at present, available for the HD and MHD modules only.

### 4.3.1 Example: EOS for a Partially Ionized Hydrogen Gas in LTE

As a simple non-trivial example, consider a partially ionized hydrogen gas in Local Thermodynamic Equilibrium (LTE, no cooling). Let the particle number densities be

$$n_0 \text{ (neutrals)}, \quad n_p = n_e \text{ (charge neutrality)} \quad \implies \quad n = n_0 + n_p + n_e = n_0 + 2n_p$$

Density and pressure can then be written as

$$\begin{cases} \rho &= m_p n_p + (m_p + m_e) n_0 + m_e n_e \approx m_p (n_p + n_0) = \mu (2n_p + n_0) m_p \\ p &= (n_e + n_p + n_0) k_B T = (1+x)(n_p + n_0) k_B T = \frac{\rho k_B T}{\mu m_p} \end{cases}$$

where  $\mu = 1/(1+x)$  is the mean molecular weight,  $x = n_p/(n_p + n_0)$  is the degree of ionization computed from Saha equation:

$$\frac{x^2}{1-x} = \frac{(2\pi m_e k_B T)^{3/2}}{h^3 (n_p + n_0)} e^{-\chi/(k_B T)}, \quad (4.10)$$

where  $\chi = 13.6$  eV and  $n_p + n_0 = \rho/m_p$ .

The (specific) internal energy includes two contributions:

$$e = \frac{3}{2} \frac{k_B T}{\mu m_p} + \frac{\chi}{m_p} x = \frac{3}{2} \frac{p}{\rho} + \frac{\chi}{m_p} x \quad (4.11)$$

where the first one represents the standard kinetic energy while the second one corresponds to the ionization energy (neutral atoms have a potential energy that is lower than that of ions). Note that the latter introduces a temperature, or equivalently, a velocity scale in the problem so that computations are no longer scale-invariant but depend on the value of `UNIT_VELOCITY` (used to obtain the temperature in Kelvin) and `UNIT_DENSITY` (used in Saha equation) that must be defined in your `Init()` function, see §6.1. Fig. 4.1 shows the classical Sod shock tube solution at  $t = 0.2$  obtained with the `IDEAL` equation of state and the `PVTE_LAW` with `UNIT_DENSITY` =  $10^5 m_p$  and `UNIT_VELOCITY` = 10 Km/s. The equivalent  $\Gamma$ , defined as

$$\Gamma_{eq} = \frac{p}{\rho e} + 1, \quad (4.12)$$

is no longer a constant but a function of the temperature, see Fig. 4.2.

The implementation of this particular EOS can be found in `Src/EOS/PVTE/pvte.law.H+.c` (simply copy it to your working directory as `pvte.law.c`). Eq. (4.11) is implemented by the `InternalEnergyFunc()` function while the mean molecular weights  $\mu$  is defined by the `GetMu()` function.



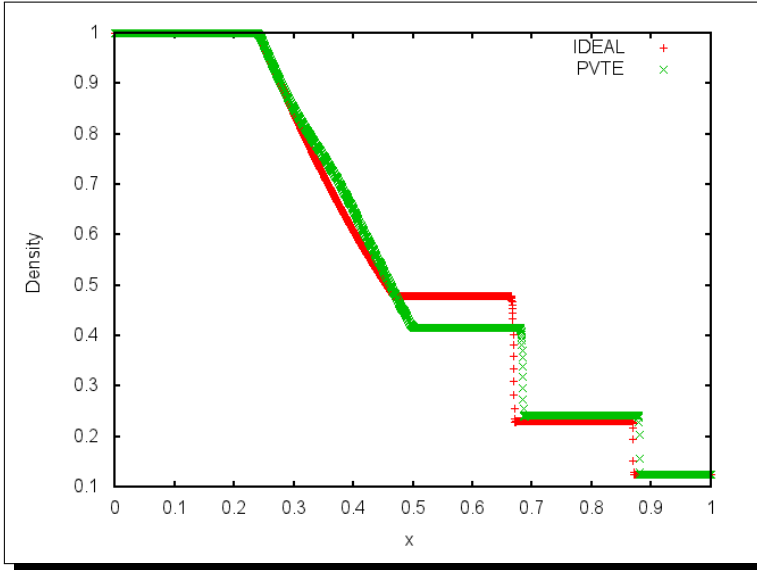


Figure 4.1: Density plot for the Sod shock tube test at  $t = 0.2$  obtained with the *IDEAL* EOS (red) and the *PVTE\_LAW* EOS (green) with reference density  $10^5 m_p$  and reference velocity  $10^6$  cm/s.

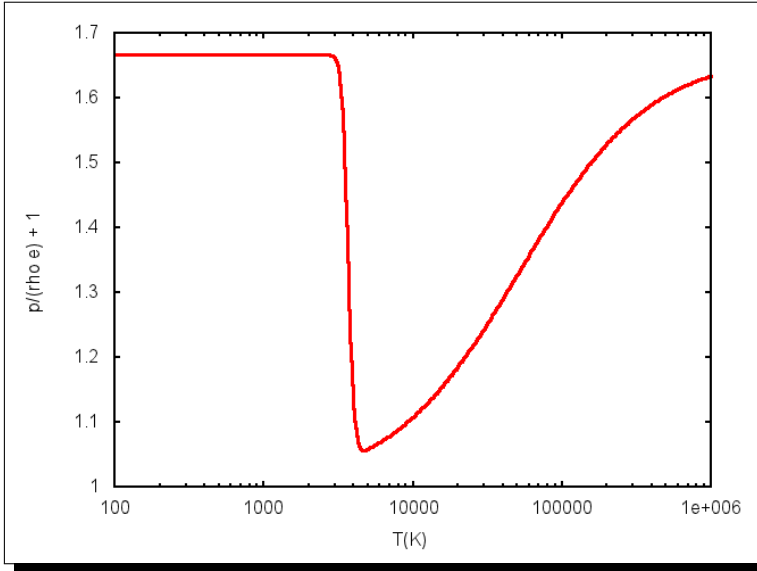


Figure 4.2: Equivalent  $\Gamma = p/(\rho e) + 1$  for the *PVTE\_LAW* EOS of a partially ionized hydrogen gas.

### 4.3.2 Analytic vs. tabulated approach

As **PLUTO** performs conversions between primitive (e.g. density and pressure) and conservative variables (e.g. total energy and momentum) during a single update step, the *PVTE\_LAW* Eqns. (4.8) must often be inverted to obtain the temperature from pressure or internal energy. Since Eqns (4.8), specially the second one, can be nonlinear functions of  $T$ , the inversion must be taken numerically using a root finder and this can be an expensive task.

In the equilibrium case, however, a faster and often more convenient approach is to have **PLUTO** pre-compute tabulated versions of the EOS so as to replace expensive function evaluations with tables. In this case no root finder is used and computations involving EOS require (direct or inverse) simpler lookup table operations and bi-linear interpolation. This feature is always turned on by default but can be overridden through the user-defined constants (see §2.1.11) `PV_TEMPERATURE_TABLE` and/or `TV_ENERGY_TABLE` in your `definitions.h`. For example, the following definitions

```
#define PV_TEMPERATURE_TABLE YES
#define TV_ENERGY_TABLE NO
```

tell **PLUTO** to replace the thermal EOS with a temperature table  $T = T(p_i, \rho_j)$  while still using the

analytical approach (i.e. direct function evaluation or root finder) for the caloric EOS.

The tables  $T(p_i, \rho_j)$  and  $\rho e(T_i, \rho_j)$  are initialized at runtime and used throughout the integration. The number of points needed to construct such tables is fixed by the constants  $\{\text{PV\_TEMPERATURE\_TABLE\_NX}, \text{PV\_TEMPERATURE\_TABLE\_NY}\}$  for the first table and  $\{\text{TV\_ENERGY\_TABLE\_NX}, \text{TV\_ENERGY\_TABLE\_NY}\}$  for the second one. Note that a fairly large number of sample points in temperature may have to be used for the internal energy to avoid convexity problems and anomalous behavior of physical quantities along classical waves (e.g.  $\text{TV\_ENERGY\_TABLE\_NX} \gtrsim 2048$ ). This issue will be addressed in future releases of **PLUTO**.

## 4.4 The *TAUB* Equation of state

The Taub-Matthews (TM) equation of state is available to describe a relativistic perfect gas, for which the adiabatic exponent is a function of the temperature. The actual expression for the Synge gas [52] is rather complex and **PLUTO** employs a quadratic approximation to the theoretical relativistic perfect gas EOS ( $\Gamma \rightarrow 5/3$  in the low temperature limit, and  $\Gamma \rightarrow 4/3$  in the high temperature limit, see [30, 35]):

$$\left(h - \frac{p}{\rho}\right) \left(h - 4\frac{p}{\rho}\right) = 1, \quad (4.13)$$

where  $h$  is the specific enthalpy related to the internal energy and pressure through

$$h = 1 + e + \frac{p}{\rho}.$$

---

## 5. Dissipative Effects

---

In this chapter we give an overview of the code capabilities for treating dissipative (or diffusion) terms which, at present, include

- Viscosity (HD, MHD), described in §5.1;
- Resistivity (MHD), described in §5.2;
- Thermal conduction (HD, MHD), described in §5.3.

Each modules can be individually turned on from the physics sub-menus accessible via the Python script.

Numerical integration of diffusion processes (viscosity, resistivity and thermal conduction) requires the solution of mixed hyperbolic/parabolic partial differential equations which can be carried out using either a standard explicit time-stepping scheme or the Super-Time-Stepping (STS) technique, see §5.4. Depending on the time step restriction, you may include diffusion processes by setting the corresponding sub-menu choice(s) to *EXPLICIT* or to *SUPER\_TIME\_STEPPING*, respectively.

## 5.1 Viscosity

The viscous stresses enter the HD and MHD equations with two parabolic diffusion terms in the momentum and the energy conservation. Adding the viscous stress tensor to the original conservation law, Eq. (1.1), we obtain a mixed hyperbolic/parabolic system which, in compact form, may be expressed by the following:

$$\frac{\partial \mathbf{U}}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot \mathbf{T} = \nabla \cdot \mathbf{\Pi} + \mathbf{S} \quad (5.1)$$

where  $\mathbf{\Pi}$  represents the viscous stress tensor, whose components are given by

$$(\Pi)_{ij} = 2 \frac{\nu_1}{h_i h_j} \left( \frac{v_{i;j} + v_{j;i}}{2} \right) + \left( \nu_2 - \frac{2}{3} \nu_1 \right) \nabla \cdot \mathbf{v} \delta_{ij}. \quad (5.2)$$

Coefficients  $\nu_1$  and  $\nu_2$  are the first (shear) and second (bulk) parameter of viscosity respectively,  $v_{i;j}$  and  $v_{j;i}$  denote the covariant derivatives whereas  $h_i, h_j$  are the geometrical elements of the respective direction. The expression above holds for an isotropic viscous stress and the resulting tensor is symmetric, with  $(\Pi)_{ij} = (\Pi)_{ji}$ .

The actual diffusion terms will then be given by  $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{\Pi}$  and  $\nabla \cdot (\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{\Pi})$  on the right hand side of the momentum and the energy equation respectively. These fluxes are added to the hyperbolic momentum and energy fluxes computed with a Riemann solver in a fully conservative and unsplit fashion (if *EXPLICIT* is chosen). In curvilinear geometries, additional geometrical source terms coming from the tensor's divergence are added to the right hand side of the equations. On the other hand, if *VISCOSITY* is set to *STS*, advection and diffusion terms are treated separately using operator splitting. The implementation of the previous expressions together with the equation module can be found under the directory `Src/Viscosity`. Derivative terms are discretized at cell interfaces using second-order accurate finite differences and assuming a uniform grid spacing. Note that when using FARGO-MHD, this module can operate only with STS.

The viscous transport coefficients  $\nu_1$  (shear) and  $\nu_2$  (bulk) are defined in the function `Visc_nu()` in the source file `PLUTO/Src/Viscosity/visc_nu.c`. This file should be copied from its original folder to the actual working directory before doing any modification. The `Visc_nu()` function has the following syntax:

Syntax:

```
void Visc_nu(double *v, double x1, double x2, double x3,
            double *nu1, double *nu2)
```

Arguments:

- `v`: a pointer to a vector of primitive variables;
- `x1, x2, x3`: local spatial coordinates;
- `*nu1`: a pointer to the 1st viscous coefficient (shear);
- `*nu2`: a pointer to the 2nd viscous coefficient (bulk);

Even though the behaviour of these coefficients is arbitrary, according to the user's needs, for mono-atomic gases Molecular Theory gives  $\nu_2 = 0$ . The coefficient of shear viscosity  $\nu_1$ , on the other hand, is usually specified with a power law behaviour with respect to the temperature (e.g. the Sutherland formula). For more information on the analytical and numerical treatment of viscosity see [22] and [55]. It should be noted, nonetheless, that both transport coefficients must have dimensions of  $\rho \times \text{length}^2/\text{time}$ , for the correct control of the timestep, according to the stability condition discussed at the beginning of this chapter.

## 5.2 Resistivity

The resistive module is enabled by setting `RESISTIVE_MHD` to either `EXPLICIT` (for time-explicit computations) or to `SUPER_TIME_STEPPING` (to accelerate explicit computation) from the Python menu. Magnetic field dissipation is modeled by introducing the resistivity tensor  $\eta$  so that the electric field becomes  $\mathbf{\Omega} = -\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{B} + \eta \cdot \mathbf{J}$ , where  $\mathbf{J} \equiv \nabla \times \mathbf{B}$  is the current density. The induction and energy equations gain extra terms on the right hand sides:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial \mathbf{B}}{\partial t} + \nabla \times (-\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{B}) &= -\nabla \times (\eta \cdot \mathbf{J}) \\ \frac{\partial E}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot [(E + p_t)\mathbf{v} - \mathbf{B}(\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{B})] &= -\nabla \cdot [(\eta \cdot \mathbf{J}) \times \mathbf{B}] . \end{aligned} \quad (5.3)$$

Similarly, the internal energy equation modifies to

$$\frac{\partial p}{\partial t} + \mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla p + \rho c_s^2 \nabla \cdot \mathbf{v} = (\Gamma - 1) (\eta \cdot \mathbf{J}) \cdot \mathbf{J} . \quad (5.4)$$

The resistive tensor  $\eta$  is assumed to be diagonal with components

$$\eta \equiv \text{diag}(\eta_{x1}, \eta_{x2}, \eta_{x3}) . \quad (5.5)$$

The module is implemented in the `Src/MHD/Resistive` directory and the functional form of  $\eta$  can be specified by editing your local copy of `PLUTO/Src/MHD/Resistive_MHD/res_eta.c` which includes the function **`Resistive_eta()`**:

Syntax:

```
void Resistive_eta(double *v, double x1, double x2, double x3,
                  double *J, double *eta)
```

Arguments:

- `v`: a pointer to a vector of primitive variables;
- `x1, x2, x3`: local spatial coordinates;
- `J`: a pointer to the electric current vector;
- `eta`: a pointer to an array containing the three components of the resistive diagonal tensor.

The resistive module works in 1, 2 and 3 dimensions in all systems of coordinates on both uniform and non-uniform grid, although higher accuracy can be achieved on uniform grid spacing. Both cell-centered and staggered MHD are supported using either `EXPLICIT` or `SUPER_TIME_STEPPING` integration.

The choice of the MHD formulation determines two different ways to compute  $\nabla \times \mathbf{B}$ . For cell-centered MHD, the three components of the current are calculated at the zone interfaces normal to the sweep integration direction. For staggered MHD, current components are computed (just once at the beginning of the step) at cell edges using the staggered field and the three components of  $\mathbf{J}$  have different spatial location.

**Note:** The resistive module is only partially compatible with the entropy switch.

### 5.3 Thermal Conduction

Thermal conduction can be included for the hydro (HD) or MHD equations by introducing an additional divergence term in the energy equation:

$$\frac{\partial E}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot [(E + p_t)\mathbf{v} - \mathbf{B}(\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{B})] = \nabla \cdot \mathbf{F}_c, \quad (5.6)$$

where  $\mathbf{F}_c$  is a flux-limited expression that smoothly varies between the classical and saturated thermal conduction regimes  $\mathbf{F}_{\text{class}}$  and  $\mathbf{F}_{\text{sat}}$ , respectively ([49, 41]):

$$\mathbf{F}_c = \frac{F_{\text{sat}}}{F_{\text{sat}} + |\mathbf{F}_{\text{class}}|} \mathbf{F}_{\text{class}}. \quad (5.7)$$

In the MHD case, thermal conductivity is highly anisotropic being largely suppressed in the direction transverse to the field. Denoting with  $\hat{\mathbf{b}} = \mathbf{B}/|\mathbf{B}|$  the unit vector in the direction of magnetic field, the classical thermal conduction flux may be written as ([3]):

$$\mathbf{F}_{\text{class}} = \kappa_{\parallel} \hat{\mathbf{b}} (\hat{\mathbf{b}} \cdot \nabla T) + \kappa_{\perp} [\nabla T - \hat{\mathbf{b}} (\hat{\mathbf{b}} \cdot \nabla T)], \quad (5.8)$$

where the subscripts  $\parallel$  and  $\perp$  denote, respectively, the parallel and normal components to the magnetic field,  $T$  is the temperature,  $\kappa_{\parallel}$  and  $\kappa_{\perp}$  are the thermal conduction coefficients along and across the field. In the purely hydrodynamical limit (no magnetic field), Eq. (5.8) reduces to  $\mathbf{F}_c = \kappa_{\parallel} \nabla T$ .

Saturated effects ([49, 13]) are accounted for by making the flux independent of  $\nabla T$  for very large temperature gradients. In this limit, the flux magnitude approaches  $F_{\text{sat}} = 5\phi\rho c_{\text{iso}}^3$  where  $c_{\text{iso}}$  is the isothermal speed of sound and  $\phi < 1$  is a free parameter.

The coefficients appearing in Eq. (5.8), (5.7) and in the definition of the saturated flux may be specified using the function `TC_kappa()` in (your local copy of) `PLUTO/Src/Thermal_Conduction/tc_kappa.c` and by noting the equivalence  $\kappa_{\parallel} \rightarrow \text{*kpar}$ ,  $\kappa_{\perp} \rightarrow \text{*knor}$  and  $\phi \rightarrow \text{*phi}$ . The variable `*knor` can be ignored in the HD case, where  $\kappa = \kappa_{\parallel}$ . Proper setting of units and dimensions is briefly discussed in §5.3.1.

The thermal conduction module is implemented inside `Src/Thermal_Conduction` and works in 1, 2 and 3 dimensions in all systems of coordinates (note that it is not yet compatible with the entropy switch). Derivative terms are discretized at cell interfaces using second-order accurate finite differences and assuming a uniform grid spacing. Integration may proceed via standard explicit time stepping or Super-Time-Stepping, see §5.4.

**Note:** Thermal conduction behave like a purely parabolic (diffusion) operator in the classical limit ( $\phi \rightarrow \infty$ ) and like a hyperbolic operator in the saturated limit ( $|\nabla T| \rightarrow \infty$ ). Thus in the general case a mixed treatment is required, where the parabolic term is discretized using standard central differences and the saturated term follows an upwind rule, [5, 33].

In this case and when Super-Time-Stepping integration is used to evolve the equations, several numerical tests have shown that problem involving strong discontinuities may require a reduction of the parabolic Courant number  $C_p$  (see §5.4) and a more tight coupling between the hydrodynamical and thermal conduction scale. The latter condition may be accomplished by lowering the `rmax.par` parameter (§2.3) which controls the ratio between the current time step and the diffusion time scale, see also §5.4. An example problem can be found in `Test_Problems/MHD/Thermal_conduction/Blast`.

#### 5.3.1 Dimensions

Equations (5.6)-(5.8) are solved in dimensionless form by expressing energy and time in units of  $\rho_0 v_0^2$  and  $L_0/v_0$  (respectively) and by writing temperature as  $T = (p/\rho)\mathcal{K}\mu$ , where  $p$  and  $\rho$  are in code units and  $\mu$  is the mean molecular weight. Here  $\rho_0$ ,  $v_0$ ,  $L_0$  are the unit density, velocity, length while  $\mathcal{K}$  is the

**KELVIN** macro, see §6.1. The thermal conduction coefficients must be properly defined by re-absorbing the correct normalization constants in the **TC\_kappa ( )** function as follows

$$\kappa \rightarrow \kappa_{cgs} \frac{\mu m_u}{\rho_0 v_0 L_0 k_B} \quad (5.9)$$

where, for instance, one may use  $\kappa_{cgs,\parallel} = 5.6 \cdot 10^{-7} T^{5/2}$  and  $\kappa_{cgs,\perp} = 3.3 \cdot 10^{-16} n_H^2 / (\sqrt{T} B_{cgs}^2)$ , both in units of  $\text{erg s}^{-1} \text{K}^{-1} \text{cm}^{-1}$ , while  $B_{cgs}^2 = 4\pi \rho_0 v_0^2 B^2$ . An example of such dimensionalization can be found in `Test_Problems/MHD/Thermal_Conduction/Blast`.

## 5.4 Numerical Integration of Diffusion Terms

### 5.4.1 Explicit Time Stepping

With the explicit time integration, parabolic contributions are added to the upwind hyperbolic fluxes at the same time in an unsplit fashion:

$$\mathbf{F} \rightarrow \mathbf{F}_{\text{hyp}} + \mathbf{F}_{\text{par}} \quad (5.10)$$

where “hyp” and “par” are, respectively, the hyperbolic and parabolic fluxes (see also §3.1 of [33]).

Such methods are, however, subject to a rather restrictive stability condition since, in the diffusion-dominated limit,  $\Delta t \sim \Delta l^2 / \eta$  where  $\eta$  is the maximum diffusion coefficient, see Table 2.1 for the exact limiting factor.

Clearly, high resolution and large diffusion coefficients may lead to drastic reduction of the time step thus making the computation almost impracticable.

### 5.4.2 Super-Time-Stepping (STS)

STS, [2], is a technique that considerably accelerates the standard explicit treatment of parabolic terms. In this case parabolic terms are treated in a separate step using operator splitting and the solution vector is evolved over a super time step, equal to the advective one. The superstep consists of  $N$  sub-steps, properly chosen for optimization and stability, depending on the diffusion coefficient, the grid size and the free parameter  $\nu < 1$  (STS\_nu):

$$\Delta t^n = \Delta t_{\text{par}} \frac{N}{2\sqrt{\nu}} \frac{(1 + \sqrt{\nu})^{2N} - (1 - \sqrt{\nu})^{2N}}{(1 + \sqrt{\nu})^{2N} + (1 - \sqrt{\nu})^{2N}}, \quad \text{with} \quad \Delta t_{\text{par}} = \frac{C_p}{\frac{2}{N_{\text{dim}}} \max_{ijk} \left( \sum_d \frac{\mathcal{D}_d}{\Delta l_d^2} \right)}. \quad (5.11)$$

Here  $\Delta t_{\text{par}}$  is the explicit parabolic time step computed in terms of the diffusion coefficient  $\mathcal{D}$  and physical grid size  $\Delta l$ . The previous equation is solved to find  $N$  for given values of  $\Delta t^n$ ,  $\Delta t_{\text{par}}$  and  $\nu$ . For  $\nu \rightarrow 0$ , STS is asymptotically  $N$  times faster than the standard explicit scheme. However, very low values of  $\nu$  may result in an unstable integration whereas values close to 1 can decrease STS's efficiency. By default  $\nu = 0.01$ , a value which in many cases retains stability whereas giving substantial gain, see Fig 5.1. To change the value of  $\nu = \text{STS\_nu}$ , simply redefine it as a user-defined symbolic constant see §2.1.11.

Stability analysis for the constant coefficient diffusion equation, [6], indicates that the value of  $C_p$  (parabolic Courant number) should be  $\leq 1/N_{\text{dim}}$  ( $N_{\text{dim}}$  is the number of spatial dimensions) and it may be used to adjust the size of the spectral radius for strongly nonlinear problems. A reduction of  $C_p$  will result in increased stability at the cost of more substeps  $N$ . The default value is  $C_p = 0.8/N_{\text{dim}}$  but it may be changed in your `pluto.ini` through **CFL.par**, see §2.3.

Since STS treats parabolic equations in an operator-split formalism, it may be advisable (for highly nonlinear problems involving strong discontinuities) to limit the scale disparity between advection and diffusion time scales by restricting the time step  $\Delta t^n$  to be at most  $r_{\text{max}} \Delta t_{\text{par}}$ , with  $\Delta t_{\text{par}}$  defined by Eq. (5.11) and  $r_{\text{max}}$  a free parameter, see §2.3. In this cases,  $r_{\text{max}}$  may be lowered by lowering **rmax.par** in `pluto.ini` from its default value (100) to 40 or even less.

Note that although this method is in many cases considerably more efficient than the explicit one, it is found to be slightly less accurate due to operator splitting. The method is by definition first order accurate in time, although different values of the  $\nu$  parameter are found to affect the accuracy. On the other hand, STS bypasses the severe time constraint posed by second derivative operators in high resolution simulations.

During the STS step, momentum, magnetic field or total energy can be evolved in time. The `ENTROPY_SWITCH` can thus be enabled but will be effective only during the hydro step.



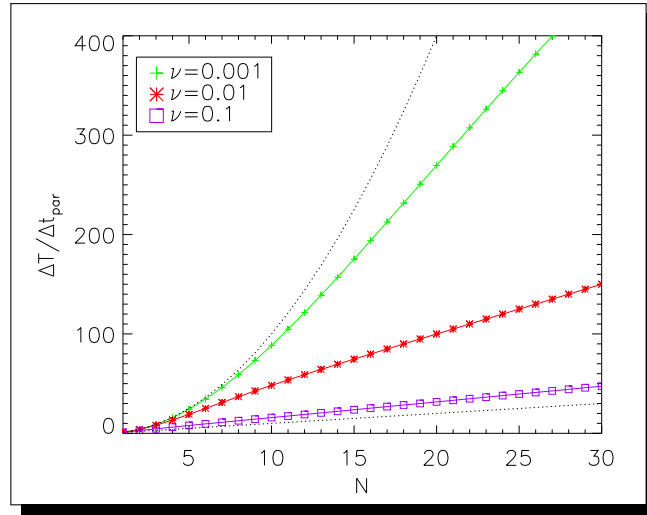


Figure 5.1: Length of a super-step (in units of the explicit one,  $\Delta T / \Delta t_{\text{par}}$ ) as function of the number of sub-steps  $N$  using different values of  $\nu = 10^{-3}$  (green, plus sign),  $\nu = 10^{-2}$  (red, asterisk - default),  $\nu = 10^{-1}$  (purple, square). The upper dotted lines gives the  $\nu \rightarrow 0$  limit ( $\Delta T \propto N^2$ ), whereas the lower one represents the explicit limit ( $\Delta T \propto N$ ). If  $\Delta T / \Delta t_{\text{par}} = 100$ , for example, explicit integration would require 100 steps while super time stepping only  $\approx 21$  (for  $\nu = 10^{-2}$ ) or 11 (for  $\nu = 10^{-3}$ ) steps.

## 6. Optically Thin Cooling

**PLUTO** can include time-dependent optically thin radiative losses in a fractional step formalism in which the hydrodynamical evolution and the source step are solved separately using operator splitting. This preserves  $2^{nd}$  order accuracy in time if both the advection and source steps are at least  $2^{nd}$  order accurate. During the cooling source step, specifically, **PLUTO** solves the internal energy and chemical reaction network equations

$$\begin{cases} \frac{\partial(\rho e)}{\partial t} &= -\Lambda(n, T, \mathbf{X}) \\ \frac{\partial \mathbf{X}}{\partial t} &= \mathbf{S}(\mathbf{X}, T) \end{cases} \quad (6.1)$$

where  $\Lambda$  is a cooling (or heating) term,  $\mathbf{X}$  is an array of fractional abundances (typically ion or molecule number fractions) and  $\mathbf{S}$  is a reaction source term. The right-hand side of Equations (6.1) is implemented in the function `Src/Cooling/<COOLING>/radiat.c` of each corresponding cooling module, except for the *POWER\_LAW* cooling where integration is performed analytically. The user can select one among several different cooling module by setting the `COOLING` flag during the python script:

- *POWER\_LAW*: power-law cooling, see §6.2;
- *TABULATED*: only the equation for the internal energy with a tabulated cooling function  $\Lambda(T)$  is provided. No chemical network, see §6.3;
- *SNEq*: cooling function for atomic hydrogen,  $\mathbf{X} = \{X_{HI}\}$ , including ionization, recombination and collisionally excited emission lines, §6.4;
- *H2\_COOL*: cooling function for atomic and molecular and atomic hydrogen,  $\mathbf{X} = \{X_{H2}, X_{HI}, X_{HII}\}$ , including ionization, recombination and collisionally excited emission lines, §6.5
- *MINEq*: cooling function for atomic and molecular and atomic hydrogen treating the time-dependent ionization state of the plasma,  $\mathbf{X} = \{X_H, X_{He}, X_C, X_N, X_{Ne}, X_O, X_S\}$ , see §6.6.

Cooling modules are implemented inside the `Src/Cooling` directory and require three dimensional constants to be correctly initialized. Dimensional constants are essential to scale data values to cgs physical units as explained in §6.1.

Other variables are introduced to control crucial parameters such as the maximum allowed cooling rate in each time step, or the cutoff temperature:

- `g_maxCoolingRate`: limit the time step so that the maximum fractional thermal losses cannot exceed `g_maxCoolingRate`. In general  $0 < g\_maxCoolingRate < 1$ ; the default is 0.1.
- `g_minCoolingTemp`: set the cut-off temperature below which cooling is artificially set to 0.

### 6.1 Units and Dimensions

In general, **PLUTO** works with non-dimensional arbitrary units so that flow quantities can be properly scaled to “reasonable” numbers. Although it is possible, in principle, to work directly in c.g.s. units (i.e. *cm*, *sec* and *gr*), it is strongly recommended to scale all quantities to non-dimensional units, in order to avoid occurrences of extremely small ( $\lesssim 10^{-9}$ ) or large numbers ( $\gtrsim 10^{12}$ ) that may be misinterpreted by numerical algorithms.

For simple adiabatic simulations involving no source term, the dimensionalization process can be avoided since the HD or MHD equations are scale invariant. However, dimensionalization is strictly necessary when specific length, time or energy scales are introduced in the problem and they must

compare to the dynamical advection scales. For such problems, **PLUTO** requires three fundamental units to be specified through the definitions of the following symbolic constants:

UNIT\_DENSITY ( $\rho_0$ ) : sets the reference density in  $\text{gr}/\text{cm}^3$ ;  
 UNIT\_LENGTH ( $L_0$ ) : sets the reference length in  $\text{cm}$ ;  
 UNIT\_VELOCITY ( $v_0$ ) : sets the reference velocity in  $\text{cm}/\text{s}$ .

All other units are derived from a combination of the previous three: time is measured in units of  $t_0 = L_0/v_0$ , pressure in units of  $p_0 = \rho_0 v_0^2$ , while magnetic field (for the MHD module only, see §3.2) in units of  $B_0 = v_0 \sqrt{4\pi\rho_0}$ , i.e.:

$$\rho = \frac{\rho_{cgs}}{\rho_0}, \quad v = \frac{v_{cgs}}{v_0}, \quad p = \frac{p_{cgs}}{\rho_0 v_0^2}, \quad B = \frac{B_{cgs}}{\sqrt{4\pi\rho_0 v_0^2}}. \quad (6.2)$$

If not specified, the default values of UNIT\_DENSITY, UNIT\_LENGTH, UNIT\_VELOCITY are, respectively,  $\rho_0 = 1 \text{ } m_p \text{ gr}/\text{cm}^3$ ,  $L_0 = 1 \text{ AU}$  and  $v_0 = 1 \text{ Km}/\text{s}$ . The values of the three fundamental units can be changed using the user-defined symbolic constants during the python setup, see §2.1.11. Setting, for example, USER\_DEF\_CONSTANTS to be 3, names and values can be defined so that your definitions.h looks like

```
/* -- user-defined symbolic constants -- */
#define UNIT_DENSITY      1.67e-23
#define UNIT_LENGTH      3.1e18
#define UNIT_VELOCITY    1.e5
```

Note that, when the relativistic modules are used,  $v_0$  must be the speed of light.

Output files can be directly saved in cgs units using the .flt or .vtk data format, see §2.3.6.

**Specifying the Temperature.** In many applications, it may be more convenient to use a reference temperature to initialize pressure or velocity. In **PLUTO**, a direct relation between pressure and density (in “code”, or non-dimensional units) and temperature (in Kelvin) is provided by

$$T = \frac{p}{\rho} \frac{\mu m_u v_0^2}{k_B} = \frac{p}{\rho} \mathcal{K} \mu, \quad (6.3)$$

where  $k_B$  is the Boltzmann constant,  $m_u$  is the atomic mass unit,  $\mu$  is the mean molecular weight while  $p$  and  $\rho$  are in “code” (i.e. non-dimensional) units. The conversion factor  $\mathcal{K}$  depends on the unit velocity and it is provided by the macro **KELVIN**.

Eq. (6.3) can be easily used to define pressure once the temperature is known. A simple example is

```
v[RHO] = 0.5;          /* Density in code units */
T       = 1.e3;        /* Temperature in KELVIN */
mu      = 1.2;
v[PRS] = v[RHO]*T/(KELVIN*mu); /* Obtain pressure in code units */
```

where a constant gas composition ( $\mu = 1.2$ ) has been assumed.

**Mean Molecular Weight (Gas Composition).** The mean molecular weight  $\mu$  depends, in general, on the composition of the gas and it may be computed:

- by calling the **MeanMolecularWeight()** function when a cooling module with a reaction network is employed, e.g.

```
mu = MeanMolecularWeight(v);
```

where  $v$  is an array of primitive variables containing only the ion fractions (density and pressure do not need to be defined).

- by calling the **GetMu()** function when the *PVTE\_LAW* equation of state is adopted with equilibrium ionization, see §4.3. In this case temperature (in Kelvin) and density (in code units) must be supplied as input arguments:

```
T = 2.5e3; /* In Kelvin */
rho = 1.0; /* In code units. Means rho*UNIT_DENSITY in cgs units */
GetmU(T, rho, &mu);
```

### Examples.

- *Example #1:* consider a simple 1-D flow with typical number densities of the order of  $n \approx 10 \text{ cm}^{-3}$ , temperatures of the order of  $T \approx 10^4 \text{ K}$  (corresponding to typical sound speeds of  $c_{s0} \approx 10 \text{ Km/s}$ ). Suppose, also, that the flow is propagating with uniform speed  $v \approx 50 \text{ Km/s}$  and the typical scale size of the problem is  $L \approx 1 \text{ pc} \approx 3.1 \cdot 10^{18} \text{ cm}$ . A possibility is to define the reference density, velocity and length respectively as

$$\rho_0 = n_0 m_p \approx 1.67 \cdot 10^{-23} \text{ gr/cm}^3, \quad v_0 = 1 \text{ Km/s} = 10^5 \text{ cm/s}, \quad L_0 = 3.1 \cdot 10^{18} \text{ cm}$$

From the python script, this is done by including the following line in definitions.h:

```
/* -- user-defined symbolic constants -- */

#define UNIT_DENSITY (10.0*CONST_mp)
#define UNIT_LENGTH (10.0*CONST_pc)
#define UNIT_VELOCITY 1.e5
```

where *CONST\_mp* is one of the constant names supplied with the code (see Appendix B). Please remember using parenthesis around a macro expression to avoid incorrect expansion.

With this choice of units, the piece of code describing the initial condition becomes

```
v[RHO] = 1.0; /* means 1 * [1.67 10^{-23} gr/cm^3 or 10/cm^3] */
v[VX1] = 50.0; /* means 50 * [1 Km/sec] */
cs = 10.0; /* means 10 * [1 Km/sec] */

/* -- define pressure to that sound speed = 1 * 1.e6 = 10 Km/sec -- */

v[PRS] = v[RHO]*cs*cs/g_gamma; /* means 100/gmm * [\rho_0*v_0^2] */
```

where *CONST\_PI* is one of the **PLUTO** pre-defined symbolic constants, see §B.1. With this initialization, the sound speed is exactly  $c_s = 10 \text{ Km/s}$ .

- *Example #2:* consider a flow with typical number densities of the order of  $n \approx 4 \times 10^3 \text{ cm}^{-3}$ , temperature  $T = 2.5 \times 10^3 \text{ K}$  and Mach number  $M = v/c_s = 15$  while the typical length scale is  $L_0 \approx 10 \text{ AU}$ . Suppose also that a magnetic field with strength of  $10 \mu\text{G}$  is also present. Units can be set in definitions.h:

```
/* -- user-defined symbolic constants -- */

#define UNIT_DENSITY (1.e3*CONST_mp)
#define UNIT_LENGTH (10.0*CONST_au)
#define UNIT_VELOCITY 1.e5
```

The sound speed  $c_s$  is defined, for an adiabatic equation of state, by the relation

$$c_s = \sqrt{\frac{\Gamma p}{\rho}} = \sqrt{\frac{\Gamma T}{\mathcal{K}_\mu}}.$$

The initial condition is then implemented as follows:

```

v[RHO] = 4.0; /* means 4 * [10^3 * 1.67e-24 gr/cm^3] */
T = 2.5e3; /* Temperature in Kelvin */
#if COOLING == SNEq
  CompEquil (n, T, v); /* Compute ionization fraction at equilibrium */
  mu = MeanMolecularWeight(v); /* Assume a network is present */
#endif
v[PRS] = v[RHO]*T/(KELVIN*mu); /* Pressure in units of rho0*v0^2 */

/* -- Define sound speed and velocity -- */

cs = sqrt(g_gamma*v[PRS]/v[RHO]); /* in units of [1 Km/s] */
v[VX1] = M*cs; /* in units of 15*cs*[1 Km/sec] */

/* -- Assign a magnetic field of 10^{-5} Gauss -- */

v[BX1] = 1.e-5/sqrt(4.0*CONST_PI*UNIT_DENSITY)/UNIT_VELOCITY;

```

The **CompEquil()** function is not strictly necessary but it has been introduced to compute ionization equilibrium values for a given reference temperature and number density. Its implementation may differ depending on the cooling module. In alternative, the fraction of neutrals could have been specified directly, e.g, `v[X_HI] = 0.6;`.

Finally, we notice that it is customary, sometimes, to assign magnetic field values in terms of the plasma  $\beta = 2p/B^2$ . Since  $\beta$  is already a dimensionless parameter, one should not worry about proper dimensionalization, and the line defining the magnetic field must be replaced by

```

beta = 4.0; /* this is my plasma beta = 2p/B^2 */
v[BX1] = sqrt(2.0*v[PRS]/beta); /* in units of v_0/sqrt(4\pi\rho_0) */

```

## 6.2 Power Law Cooling

Power law cooling is the most simple form of cooling, where the loss term in the internal energy equation becomes:

$$\Lambda = a_r \rho^2 T^\alpha \quad (6.4)$$

There are no new species when this form of cooling is selected. When an ideal equation of state is used, the source step becomes

$$\frac{dp}{dt} = -(\Gamma - 1)a_r \rho^{2-\alpha} p^\alpha (\mathcal{K}\mu)^\alpha$$

and since density is not affected during this step, integration is done analytically:

$$p^{n+1} = \begin{cases} \left[ (p^n)^{1-\alpha} - \Delta t C (1-\alpha) \right]^{\frac{1}{1-\alpha}} & \text{for } \alpha \neq 1 \\ p^n \exp(-C \Delta t) & \text{for } \alpha = 1 \end{cases} \quad (6.5)$$

where  $C = (\Gamma - 1)a_r \rho^{2-\alpha} (\mathcal{K}\mu)^\alpha$  is a constant.

The default power law accounts for bremsstrahlung cooling by solving

$$\frac{dp_{\text{cgs}}}{dt_{\text{cgs}}} = -(\Gamma - 1) \frac{a_{\text{br}}}{\mu^2 m_H^2} \rho_{\text{cgs}}^2 \sqrt{T(K)} \quad \Rightarrow \quad \frac{dp}{dt} = -C \rho^2 \sqrt{\frac{p}{\rho}} \quad (6.6)$$

with  $p, t$  and  $\rho$  given in code units and

$$C = a_{\text{br}} \frac{\Gamma - 1}{(k_B \mu m_H)^{3/2}} \frac{\rho_0 L_0}{v_0^2}$$

where  $\rho_0, v_0$  and  $L_0$  are the reference density, velocity and length defined in §6.1 and  $a_{\text{br}} = 2 \cdot 10^{-27}$  in expressed in c.g.s. units. The implementation of this cooling step, with  $\alpha = 1/2$ , can be found under `Src/Source_Terms/Power_Law/cooling.c`.

### 6.3 Tabulated Cooling

The tabulated cooling module provides a way to solve the internal energy equation

$$\Lambda = n^2 \tilde{\Lambda}(T), \quad \text{with} \quad n = \frac{\rho}{m_p + m_e} \quad (6.7)$$

when the cooling/heating function  $\tilde{\Lambda}(T)$  is not known analytically but rather is available as a table sampled at discrete (not necessarily equidistant) points, i.e.,  $\tilde{\Lambda}_j \equiv \tilde{\Lambda}(T_j)$ . In order to use this module, the user must provide a two-column ascii files in the working directory named `cooltable.dat` of the form

```

.      .
.      .
T (j)  Lambda (j)
.      .
.      .
.      .

```

with the temperature expressed in Kelvin and the cooling/heating function  $\tilde{\Lambda}$  in `ergs.cm3/s`. An example of such file<sup>1</sup> can be found in `Src/Cooling/Tab/cooltable.dat`. As usual, the dimensionalization is done automatically by the cooling module, once `UNIT.DENSITY`, `UNIT.LENGTH` and `UNIT.VELOCITY` have been defined in `Init()`.

Alternatively, the `TABULATED` cooling module can be used to provide a user-defined cooling function,

$$\Lambda = \Lambda(\mathbf{V}), \quad (6.8)$$

where  $\mathbf{V}$  is a vector primitive variables. The explicit dependence of  $\Lambda$  can be given by i) copying `Src/Cooling/Tab/radiat.c` into your local working directory and ii) make the appropriate changes.

### 6.4 Simplified Non-Equilibrium Cooling: *SNEq*

This module is implemented in the `Src/Cooling/SNEq` directory and introduces a new variable, with index `X_HI` used to label the fraction of neutrals  $x_{HI}$ :

$$x_{HI} = \frac{n_{HI}}{n_H}. \quad (6.9)$$

You can assign the fraction of neutrals by setting, in the usual fashion

```
v[X_HI] = 0.2; /* for example */
```

in your `Init()` function. The fraction of neutrals is treated as a passive scalar during the hydro step while it is governed by the following ODE during the cooling step:

$$\frac{\partial x_{HI}}{\partial t} = S = n_e \left[ - (c_r + c_i) f_n + c_r \right] \quad (6.10)$$

together with the energy equation

$$\frac{\partial(\rho e)}{\partial t} = -\Lambda = -n_e n_H \left( \sum_{k=1}^{k=16} j_k + w_{i/r} \right) \quad (6.11)$$

where the summation over  $k$  accounts for 16 different line emissions coming from some of the most common elements,  $k = \text{Ly } \alpha, \text{H } \alpha, \text{HeI (584+623), CI (9850 + 9823), CII (156}\mu\text{), CII (2325}\text{\AA}), \text{NI (5200 } \text{\AA}), \text{NII (6584 + 6548 } \text{\AA}), \text{OI (63}\mu\text{), OI (6300 + 6363 } \text{\AA}), \text{OII (3727), MgII (2800), SiII (35}\mu\text{), SII (6717 + 6727), FeII (25}\mu\text{), FeII (1.6}\mu\text{)}$ .

<sup>1</sup>Generated with Cloudy 90.01 for an optically thin plasma and solar abundances, thanks to T. Plewa.

The coefficient  $j_k$  in (6.11) has dimensions of erg/sec cm<sup>3</sup> and is computed from

$$j_k = \frac{\hbar^2 \sqrt{2\pi}}{\sqrt{k_B m_e m_e}} f_k q_{12} \frac{h\nu_k}{1 + n_e(q_{21}/A_{21})}$$

where  $k$  is the index of a particular transition,  $f_k = n_k/n_H$  is the abundance for that particular species. Here

$$q_{12} = \frac{8.6 \cdot 10^{-6}}{\sqrt{T}} \frac{\Omega_{12}}{g_1} \exp\left(-\frac{h\nu_k}{k_B T}\right), \quad q_{21} = \frac{8.6 \cdot 10^{-6}}{\sqrt{T}} \frac{\Omega_{21}}{g_2}$$

where  $\Omega_{12} = \Omega_{21}$  is the collision strength and is tabulated.

In Eq. (6.11)  $w_{i/r}$  represents the thermal energy lost by ionization and recombination:

$$w_{i/r} = c_i \times 13.6 \times 1.6 \cdot 10^{-12} f_n + c_r \times 0.67 \times 1.6 \cdot 10^{-12} (1 - f_n) \frac{T}{11590}$$

where  $c_r$  and  $c_i$  are the hydrogen ionization and recombination rate coefficients:

$$c_r = \frac{2.6 \cdot 10^{-11}}{\sqrt{T}}; \quad c_i = \frac{1.08 \cdot 10^{-8} \sqrt{T}}{(13.6)^2} \exp\left(-\frac{157890.0}{\sqrt{T}}\right).$$

## 6.5 Molecular Hydrogen Non-Equilibrium Cooling: *H2\_COOL*

This module is implemented in the Src/Cooling/H2\_COOL directory and introduces three new variables, with index X\_HI, X\_H2 and X\_HII used to label the fraction of atomic hydrogen, molecular hydrogen and ionized hydrogen respectively as follows:

$$x_{H2} = \frac{n_{H2}}{n_H}, \quad x_{HI} = \frac{n_{HI}}{n_H}, \quad x_{HII} = \frac{n_{HII}}{n_H},$$

where, the total hydrogen number density  $n_H = n_{HI} + n_{HII} + 2n_{H2}$ .

You can assign these hydrogen fractions, in a similar manner like the *SNEq* module,

```
/* for example */
v[X_HI] = 0.2;
v[X_H2] = 0.4;
v[X_HII] = 1.0 - v[X_HI] - 2.0*v[X_H2];
```

in your **Init()** function. Note, the value of  $v[X_{H2}]$  should be between 0.0 and 0.5, while the remaining two hydrogen fractions can have values ranging from 0.0 to 1.0, such that their sum is conserved.

The chemical evolution of molecular, atomic and ionized hydrogen is governed by equations listed in Table 6.1. The number density of various hydrogen forms are determined by solving the chemical rate equations, which have a general form as,

$$\frac{dn_i}{dt} = \sum_{j,k} k_{j,k} n_j n_k - n_i \sum_j k_{i,j} n_j, \quad (6.12)$$

where,  $n$  is the number density,  $k_{j,k}$  is the rate of formation of  $i^{th}$  specie from all  $j$  and  $k$  species and  $k_{i,j}$  is the rate of destruction of  $i^{th}$  specie due to all  $j$  species.

The code integrates the three hydrogen fractions defined above using the advection equation of the form:

$$\frac{\partial X_i}{\partial t} = -\mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla X_i + S_i, \quad (6.13)$$

where the first term on the rhs is treated during the hydro step while only the second is integrated during the cooling step. The source terms  $S_i$  is essentially the difference between formation and destruction rate of a particular specie (see eq.6.12). Additionally, the internal energy losses take into accounts various hydrogen cooling processes,

$$\Lambda = \Lambda_{CI} + \Lambda_{RR} + \Lambda_{rotvib} + \Lambda_{H2diss} + \Lambda_{grain}, \quad (6.14)$$

Table 6.1: Summary of the chemistry reaction set.  $T$  is the temperature in Kelvin,  $T_{\text{eV}}$  is the temperature in electron-volts and  $T_2 = T/100$ 

No.	Reaction	Rate Coefficient ( $\text{cm}^3\text{s}^{-1}$ )	Reference <sup>a</sup>
1.	$\text{H} + \text{e}^- \rightarrow \text{H}^+ + 2\text{e}^-$	$k_1 = 5.84 \times 10^{-11} T^{0.5} \exp(-157,809.0/T)$	1
2.	$\text{H}^+ + \text{e}^- \rightarrow \text{H} + h\nu$	$k_2 = 2.6 \times 10^{-11} T^{-0.5}$	1
3.	$\text{H}_2 + \text{e}^- \rightarrow 2\text{H} + \text{e}^-$	$k_3 = 4.4 \times 10^{-10} T^{0.35} \exp(-102,000.0/T)$	2
4.	$\text{H}_2 + \text{H} \rightarrow 3\text{H}$	$k_4 = 1.067 \times 10^{-10} T_{\text{eV}}^{2.012} \exp[(-4.463/T_{\text{eV}})(1 + 0.2472T_{\text{eV}})^{3.512}]$	3
5.	$\text{H}_2 + \text{H}_2 \rightarrow \text{H}_2 + 2\text{H}$	$k_5 = 1.0 \times 10^{-8} \exp(-84,100/T)$	4
6.	$\text{H} + \text{H} \xrightarrow{\text{dust}} \text{H}_2$	$k_6 = 3.0 \times 10^{-17} \sqrt{T_2} (1.0 + 0.4\sqrt{T_2} + 0.2T_2 + 0.08T_2^2)$	5

<sup>a</sup>REFERENCES – (1) [46] [Eq. 1e] (2) [16] [Eq. H17]; (3) [1] [Tab. 3 Eq. 13]; (4) [57] [UMIST Database] (5) [19] [Eq. 3.8]

where,  $\Lambda_{\text{CI}}$  and  $\Lambda_{\text{RR}}$  are losses due to collisional ionization and radiative recombination respectively. The remaining terms,  $\Lambda_{\text{rotvib}}$ ,  $\Lambda_{\text{H2diss}}$  and  $\Lambda_{\text{grain}}$  are associated with molecular hydrogen and represent losses due to rotational-vibrational cooling, dissociation and gas-grain processes. Their variation with temperature for a particular set of hydrogen fractions is shown in fig.6.1. Depending on the requirement, the user can add more components to the cooling function, for e.g., cooling due to fixed fractions of standard molecules like CO, OH, H<sub>2</sub>O etc or contributions from collisional excitation of lines as indicated in the *SNEq* module.

## 6.6 Multi-Ion Non-Equilibrium Cooling: *MINEq*

This module computes the dynamical evolution and ionization state of the plasma using the multi-ion model of [54] including with 28 ion species namely HI, HeI, HeII and the first five ionization stages of C, N, O, Ne and S. For each ion, **PLUTO** introduces an additional variable – the fractional abundance of the ion with respect to the element it belongs:

$$X_{\text{ion}} = \frac{n_{\text{ion}}}{n_{\text{elem}}}.$$

The names of the additional variables for the corresponding species are: X\_HI, HeI, HeII, X\_CI, X\_CII, X\_CIII, X\_CIV, X\_CV, X\_NI, X\_NII, X\_NIII, X\_NIV, X\_NV, X\_OI, X\_OII, X\_OIII, X\_OIV, X\_OV, X\_NeI, X\_NeII, X\_NeIII, X\_NeIV, X\_NeV, X\_SI, X\_SII, X\_SIII, X\_SIV, X\_SV. Ionized hydrogen is simply  $1 - v[X\_HI]$ . You can assign the fraction of any ion specie by setting, in the usual fashion

```
v[X_HeII] = 0.2; /* for example */
```

in your **Init()** function.

The fractions of all ion species can also be automatically set for equilibrium conditions using the **CompEquil()** function in *Src/Cooling/MINEq/comp\_equil.c*:

```
double CompEquil (double N, double T, double *v)
```

where  $N$  and  $T$  are the plasma number density and temperature respectively and  $*v$  is a vector of primitive variables. The function will return the electron density as output, and  $*v$  will contain the computed ionization fractions (the other variables are not affected). The routine solves the system of equations for abundances in equilibrium.

**Note:** The number of ions for C, N, O, Ne and S may be reduced from 5 to a lower number ( $> 1$ ) by editing *Src/Cooling/MINEq/cooling.h*. This may reduce computational time if the expected temperatures are not large enough to produce high ionization stages (e.g. IV or V if  $T < 10^5 \text{ K}$ ). The current default value is 3.



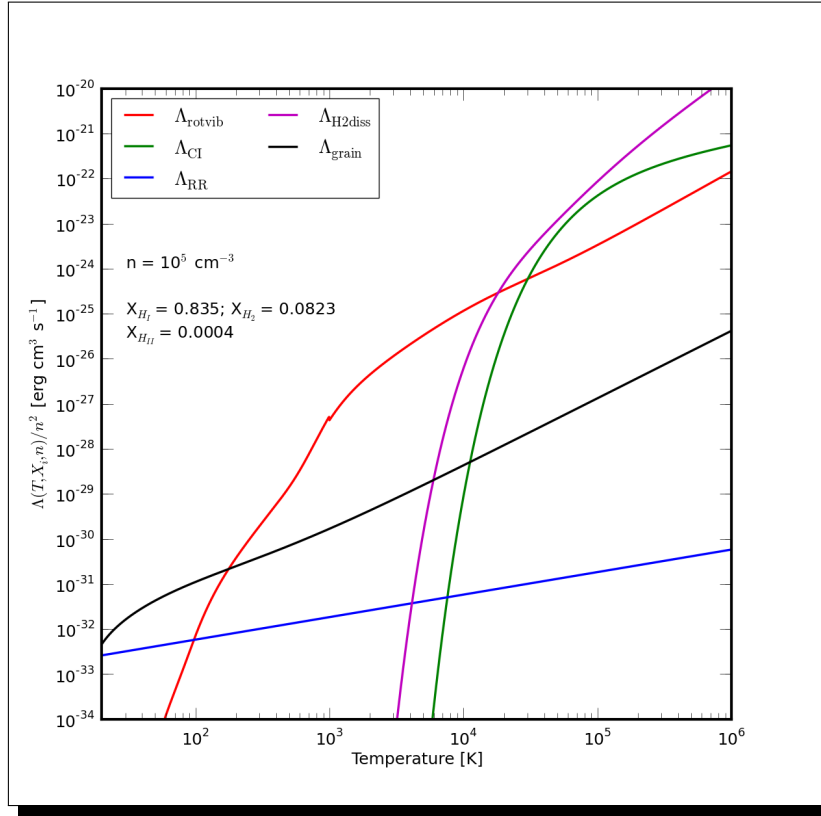


Figure 6.1: Variation of the radiative cooling functions  $\Lambda_i$  with temperature due to various processes that can affect the total energy of a gas comprising of atomic, molecular and ionized hydrogen. Here the total number density  $n$  is set to be  $10^5 \text{ cm}^{-3}$ , while the fractions of different hydrogen species are :  $X_{\text{HI}} = 0.835$ ,  $X_{\text{H2}} = 0.0823$  and  $X_{\text{HII}} = 0.0004$

The elements abundances are set in `radiat.c` from the `Src/Cooling/MINEq/` folder. When using the `MINEq` module, the cooling coefficients tables are generated at the beginning of the simulation by the routines in `Src/Cooling/MINEq/make_tables.c`. Update or customization of the atomic data can be done by editing this file.

The ion fractions are integrated through advection equations of the form:

$$\frac{\partial X_i}{\partial t} + \mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla X_i = S_i, \quad (6.15)$$

where the source term  $S_i$  is computed taking into account collisional ionization, radiative and dielectronic recombination, as well as charge-transfer with H and He processes, see [54]. Similarly, the energy loss term is

$$\Lambda = \left[ n_{\text{at}} n_{\text{el}} \Lambda_1(T, \mathbf{X}) + L_{\text{FF}} + L_{\text{I-R}} \right], \quad \Lambda_1(T, \mathbf{X}) = \sum_k X_k \mathcal{L}_k(n_{\text{el}}, T) B_k, \quad (6.16)$$

where  $B_k$  is the fractional abundance of the element, and

$$\mathcal{L}_k = \sum_i N_i \sum_{j < i} A_{ij} h \nu_{ij}, \quad (6.17)$$

is the total cooling for one ion specie, that is computed and saved to external files by the tables generation program, then loaded at runtime.

In Eq. (6.16),  $L_{\text{FF}}$  and  $L_{\text{I-R}}$  represent the energy losses in bremsstrahlung and ionization/recombination processes respectively,  $n_{\text{at}}$  and  $n_{\text{el}}$  are the total atom and electron number densities respectively.

`MINEq` uses a dynamically switching integration algorithm for the ion species and energy designed to maximize the accuracy while keeping the computational cost as low as possible.

# 7. Additional Modules

## 7.1 The ShearingBox Module

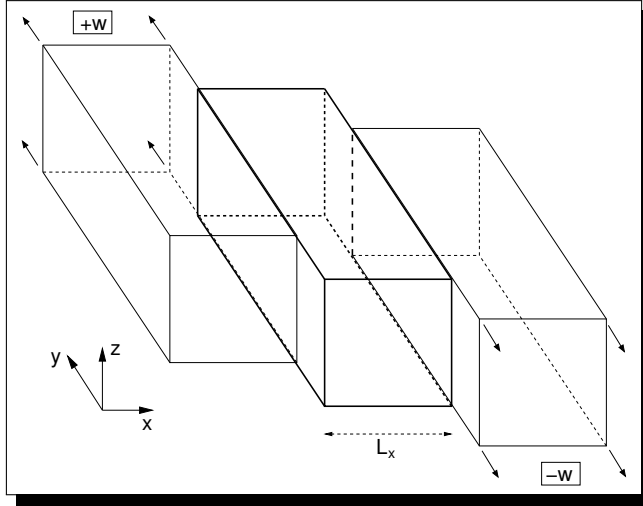


Figure 7.1: Schematic representation of the shearing boundary condition. The computational domain (central box) is assumed to be surrounded by identical boxes sliding with constant velocity  $w = |2AL_x|$  with respect to one another.

The shearingbox provides a local model of a differentially rotating system obtained by expanding the tidal forces in a reference frame co-rotating with the disk at some fiducial radius  $R_0$ . The validity of the approximation (and of the module itself) is restricted to a Cartesian box (considered small with respect to the global flow) with a steady flow consisting of a linear shear velocity,

$$v_y = -q\Omega_0 x, \quad \text{with} \quad q = -\left. \frac{d \log \Omega(R)}{d \log R} \right|_{R=R_0} \quad (7.1)$$

where  $\Omega_0$  is the local constant angular velocity and  $q$  is a local measure of the differential rotation ( $q = 3/2$  for a Keplerian profile). The module solves the HD or MHD equations in a non-inertial frame so that the momentum and energy equations become

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial(\rho v)}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot (\rho v v - \mathbf{B} \mathbf{B}) + \nabla p_t &= \rho \mathbf{g}_s - 2\Omega_0 \hat{\mathbf{z}} \times \rho \mathbf{v} \\ \frac{\partial E}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot [(E + p_t) \mathbf{v} - (\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{B}) \mathbf{B}] &= \rho \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{g}_s, \end{aligned} \quad (7.2)$$

where  $\mathbf{g}_s = \Omega_0^2(2qx\hat{\mathbf{x}} - z\hat{\mathbf{z}})$  is the tidal expansion of the effective gravity while the second term in Eq. (7.2) represents the Coriolis force. The continuity and induction equations retain the same form as the original system.

### 7.1.1 Using the module

The shearingbox module is implemented in `Src/MHD/ShearingBox` and can be used with the *ISOTHERMAL* or *IDEAL* equations of state. It is enabled by invoking the Python setup script with the `--with-sb` option.

Initial conditions are specified, as usual, in the `Init()` function where in addition you also have to assign the value of the shear parameter  $q$  through the global variable `sb_q` and the angular rotation velocity  $\Omega_0$  using the global variable `sb_Omega`. Gravitational terms should be set in the `body_force.c` function following the examples given in `Test_Problems/MHD/ShearingBox`.

While the computational box should be periodic in the azimuthal (y) direction, radial (x) boundary conditions are determined by "image" boxes sliding with relative velocity  $w = |q\Omega_0 L_x|$  relative to the computational domain, Fig 7.1. In other words, the boundary conditions at the left/right  $x$ -boundaries are

$$\begin{cases} q(x, y, z, t) &= q(x \pm L_x, y \mp wt, z, t) \\ v_y(x, y, z, t) &= v_y(x \pm L_x, y \mp wt, z, t) \pm w, \end{cases} \quad (7.3)$$

where  $q$  is any other flow quantities except  $v_y$ . This particular condition is provided by the module itself and should be selected by assigning *shearingbox* to the X1\_BEG and X1\_END boundaries in your *pluto.ini*. Boundary conditions in the vertical (z) direction may be arbitrarily prescribed.

The ShearingBox module is implemented inside Src/MHD/ShearingBox and works, at present, with the HD equations or with *CONSTRAINED\_TRANSPORT* MHD. Unlike previous releases of **PLUTO**, parallelization can now be performed in all three spatial dimensions.

## 7.2 The FARGO Module

The FARGO-MHD module permits larger time steps to be taken in those computations where a (grid-aligned) supersonic or super-fast dominant background orbital motion exists, see [34].

The algorithm decomposes the total velocity into an average azimuthal contribution and a residual term,

$$\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{v}' + \mathbf{w} \quad (7.4)$$

where  $\mathbf{v}'$  is called the residual velocity while  $\mathbf{w}$  is a background velocity field that must be solenoidal. The MHD or HD equations are solved in two steps: i) a linear transport operator corresponding to the velocity  $\mathbf{w}$  in the direction of orbital motion and ii) a standard nonlinear solver applied to the original equations written in terms of the residual velocity  $\mathbf{v}'$ .

The Courant condition is then computed only from the residual velocity, leading to substantially larger time steps. In [34] it has been shown that if the characteristic velocity of fluctuations are comparable in magnitude than the expected gain in polar coordinates is, roughly,

$$\frac{\Delta t_F}{\Delta t_s} \approx \frac{\max_{ijk} \left[ \frac{1}{\Delta R} + \frac{M+1}{R\Delta\phi} + \frac{1}{\Delta z} \right]}{\max_{ijk} \left[ \frac{1}{\Delta R} + \frac{1}{R\Delta\phi} + \frac{1}{\Delta z} \right]}, \quad (7.5)$$

where  $\Delta t_F$  and  $\Delta t_s$  are the FARGO time step and the standard time step, respectively, whereas  $M = |w|/\lambda'$  and  $\lambda' = |v'_d| + c_{f,d}$  is the characteristic speed in the  $\hat{e}_d$  direction.

The discretization is fully conservative in both angular momentum and total energy. The MHD module works only with the Constrained Transport (CT) method to control divergence-free condition.

### 7.2.1 Using the Module

The FARGO-MHD module is implemented in the directory `Src/Fargo` and can be enabled by invoking the python script with the `--with-fargo` option. It works in Cartesian, polar and spherical coordinates with a dimensionally-unsplit time stepping scheme (i.e. with `DIMENSIONAL_SPLITTING` set to `NO`). The background velocity can be computed by **PLUTO** in two different ways depending on the value of `FARGO_AVERAGE_VELOCITY` set in `Src/Fargo/Fargo.h`:

- **YES** (default): the azimuthal velocity  $v_y$  or  $v_\phi$  is averaged along the corresponding orbital direction. This operation is performed once every fixed number of time steps (set by the macro `FARGO_NSTEP_AVERAGE`, default is 10);
- **NO**: the velocity is prescribed analytically using the **FARGO.SetVelocity()** function that can be implemented in your `init.c`. This must be the default if FARGO is used together with the shearing box module.

Boundary conditions can be assigned as usual by keeping in mind that the velocity defined in `d->Vc[]` is the *total* velocity and not the residual. Output files are always written using the total velocity and not the residual.

The order of reconstruction used during the linear transport step can be set by changing `FARGO_ORDER` inside `Src/Fargo/fargo.h`. The default value is 3 (third-order PPM) but it can be lowered to 2 (second-order MUSCL-Hancock) by editing `Src/Fargo/fargo.h`. The default value of any of the three switches `FARGO_AVERAGE_VELOCITY`, `FARGO_NSTEP_AVERAGE` and `FARGO_ORDER` can be changed using the user-defined constant menu, §2.1.11.

The FARGO-MHD is typically used to model supersonic faccretion disks and a test problem can be found in the directory `Test.Problems/MHD/FARGO/Spherical_Disk` (see also the test problem documentation at `Doc/test_problems.html`).

### 7.2.2 A Note on Parallelization

The FARGO-MHD algorithm is fully parallelized in all coordinate directions with the requirement that the number of zones per processor in the orbital direction must be larger than the expected transport shift denoted with  $m$ .

With a large number of processors ( $\gtrsim 2048$ ), the resulting auto-decomposition mode may result in sub-domains that violate this condition and an error message is issued. To avoid this problem you can specify the parallel decomposition manually using the `-dec n1 [n2] [n3]` command line argument (§1.4.1) and ensure that not too many processors are used along the  $\phi$  direction. As an example, suppose you wish to use 4096 processors but only 8 along the orbital direction ( $x_2$ ). You may specify the domain decomposition by giving, say, 32, 8 and 16 in the three directions with

```
mpirun -np 4096 ./pluto -dec 32 8 16
```

## 7.3 High-order Finite Difference Schemes

An alternative to the Finite Volume (FV) methodology presented in the previous chapters and to the interpolation algorithms described in Chapter 2 is the use of conservative, high-order Finite Difference (FD) schemes. 3<sup>rd</sup> and 5<sup>th</sup> order accurate in space interpolation can be used in **PLUTO**, invoking `setup.py` with the following extension:

```
~/MyWorkDir > python $PLUTO_DIR/setup.py --with-fd
```

The available options in `INTERPOLATION` will now be

- `LIMO3_FD`: third-order reconstruction of [9];
- `WENO3_FD`: an improved version of the classical third-order WENO scheme of [20] based on new weight functions designed to improve accuracy near critical points [58];
- `WENOZ_FD`: improved WENO5 scheme proposed by [7];
- `MP5_FD`: the monotonicity preserving scheme of [51] based on a fifth-order interface value;

The use of high-order FD schemes is subject to some restrictions:

- The allowed modules are `HD` and `MHD` as the special relativistic counterparts are not yet implemented.
- In the case of the `MHD` module, only cell centered magnetic fields are supported, i.e. `DIV_CLEANNING`.
- Temporal integration can be performed only with RK3 (split or unsplit).
- Only Cartesian coordinates are supported (in any number of dimensions).

FD schemes are based on a global Lax-Friedrichs flux splitting and the reconstruction step is performed (for robustness issues) on the local characteristic fields computed by suitable projection of the positive and negative part of the flux onto the left conservative eigenvectors. For this reason, these schemes are more CPU intensive than traditional FV schemes (approximately a factor 2 to 3.5) although can achieve the same accuracy with much fewer points.

Unlike the FV schemes currently present in **PLUTO** (possessing an overall 2<sup>nd</sup> order accuracy), schemes provided by the conservative FD module are genuinely third- or fifth- order accurate. The latter, in particular, have shown [38] to outperform traditional second-order TVD schemes in terms of reduced numerical dissipation and faster convergence rates for problem involving smooth flows. Figure 7.2 shows, as a qualitative example, a comparison between traditional FV methods (such as Muscl-Hancock or PPM) and some FD methods on a problem involving circularly polarized Alfvén waves (see `Test.Problems/MHD/CP_Alfven`). Although FD schemes can correctly describe discontinuities, the advantages offered by their employment are more evident in presence of smooth flows.

### 7.3.1 WENO schemes

The WENO schemes are based on the essentially non-oscillatory (ENO) schemes, originally developed by [18] using a finite volume formulation and later improved by [48] into a finite difference form. Unlike TVD schemes that degenerate to first order at smooth extrema, ENO schemes maintain their accuracy successfully suppressing spurious oscillations. This is accomplished utilizing the smoothest stencil among a number of candidates to compute fluxes at the cell faces.

WENO schemes are the natural evolution of ENO schemes, where a weighted average is taken from all the stencil candidates. Weights are adjusted by local smoothness indicators. Originally developed by [43] for 1-D finite volume formulation, WENO schemes were then implemented in multi-dimensional FD by [20], optimizing the original weighing for accuracy.

Currently, the available WENO schemes in **PLUTO** are the 5<sup>th</sup> order WENOZ of [7] which improves over the original one [20] in that it is less dissipative and provide better resolution at critical points at a very modest additional computational cost. A third order WENO scheme is also provided, namely WENO+3 of [58]. More details can be found in the paper by Mignone, Tzeferacos & Bodo [38].

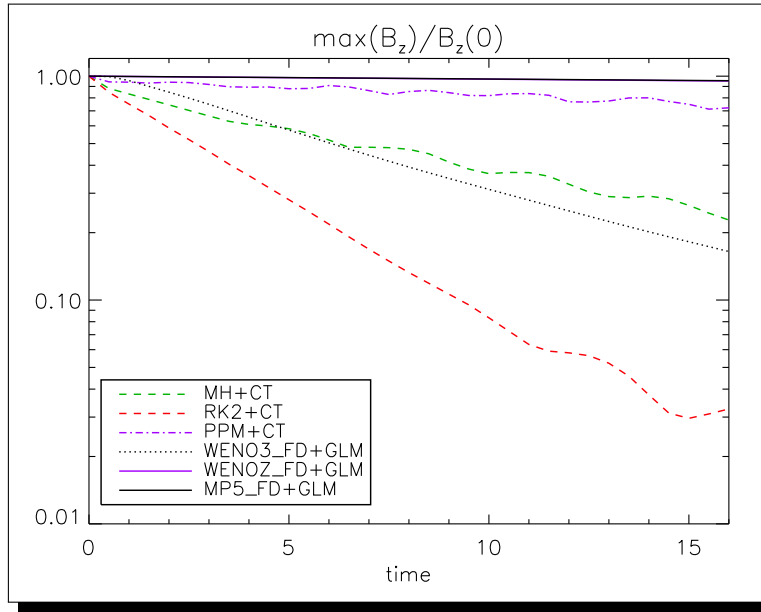


Figure 7.2: Long term (numerical) decay of a circularly polarized Alfvén wave on a 2D periodic domain with  $[120 \times 20]$  zones. The different curves plot the maximum value of  $B_z$  as a function of time and thus give a measure of the intrinsic numerical dissipation. Selected finite volume schemes employing constrained transport (CT) are: MUSCL-HANCOCK (MH+CT), Runge Kutta 2 (RK2+CT) and PPM+CT. Finite difference schemes employ the GLM formulation and are, respectively, given by WENO3, WENOZ and MP5.

### 7.3.2 LimO3 & MP5

As an alternative to the previously described WENO schemes, LimO3 and MP5 interpolations are also available. The former is a new and efficient third order limiter function, proposed by [9]. Utilizing a three point stencil to achieve piecewise-parabolic reconstruction for smooth data, LimO3 preserves its accuracy at local extrema, avoiding the well known clipping of classical second-order TVD limiters. Note that this reconstruction is also available in the finite-volume version of the code.

PLUTO's MP5 originates from the monotonicity preserving (MP) schemes of [51], which achieve high-order interface reconstruction by first providing an accurate polynomial interpolation and then by limiting the resulting value in order to preserve monotonicity near discontinuities and accuracy in smooth regions. The MP algorithm is better sought on stencils with five or more points in order to distinguish between local extrema and a genuine  $O(1)$  discontinuities.

For an inter-scheme comparison and more information on their implementation with the MHD-GLM formulation, consult [38].

---

## 8. Output and Visualization

---

In this Chapter we describe the data formats supported by the static grid version of **PLUTO** and how they can be read and visualized with some popular visualization packages.

### 8.1 Output Data Formats

With the static version of **PLUTO**, data can be dumped to disk in a variety of different formats. The majority of them is supported on serial as well as parallel systems. The available formats are classified based on their file extensions:

- \*.dbl: double-precision (8 byte) binary data (serial/parallel);
- \*.flt: single-precision (4 byte) binary data (serial/parallel);
- \*.dbl.h5: double-precision (8 byte) HDF5 data (serial/parallel);
- \*.flt.h5: single-precision (4 byte) HDF5 data (serial/parallel);
- \*.vtk: VTK (legacy) file format using structured or rectilinear grids (serial/parallel);
- \*.tab: tabulated multi-column ascii format (serial only);
- \*.ppm: portable pixmap color images of 2D data slices (serial/parallel);
- \*.png: portable network graphics<sup>1</sup> color images of 2D data slices (serial/parallel).

Output files are named as `base.nnnn.ext`, where `base` is either “data” (when all variables are written to a single file) or the name of the corresponding variable (when each variable is written to a different file, see Table 8.1), `nnnn` is a four-digit zero-padded integer counting the output number and `ext` is the corresponding file extension listed above. By default, data files are written in the local working directory unless a different location has been specified using `output_dir` in your `pluto.ini`, see §2.3.6. There’s no distinction between serial or parallel mode.

Base name	Variable	Single record size
rho	Density	$N_1 \times N_2 \times N_3$
prs	Pressure	$N_1 \times N_2 \times N_3$
vx1	$x_1$ velocity	$N_1 \times N_2 \times N_3$
vx2	$x_2$ velocity	$N_1 \times N_2 \times N_3$
vx3	$x_3$ velocity	$N_1 \times N_2 \times N_3$
bx1	$x_1$ mag. field	$N_1 \times N_2 \times N_3$
bx2	$x_2$ mag. field	$N_1 \times N_2 \times N_3$
bx3	$x_3$ mag. field	$N_1 \times N_2 \times N_3$
bx1s	$x_1$ stag. mag. field	$(N_1 + 1) \times N_2 \times N_3$
bx2s	$x_2$ stag. mag. field	$N_1 \times (N_2 + 1) \times N_3$
bx3s	$x_3$ stag. mag. field	$N_1 \times N_2 \times (N_3 + 1)$
tr1	first tracer	$N_1 \times N_2 \times N_3$

Table 8.1: Base prefix for multiple data set. The size is in units of 4 (for the *flt* format) or 8 (for the *dbl* format) bytes.

---

<sup>1</sup>Bitmap image format that employs lossless data compression



For each format, it is possible to dump all or just some of the variables. Additional user-defined variables may be written as well, §8.2.0.1. The default setting is described separately for each output in the next subsections and may be changed if necessary, see §8.2.1.

Each format has an independent output frequency and an associated log file (i.e. `dbl.out`, `flt.out`, `vtk.out` and so forth) keeping track of the dump history. Two additional files, `grid.out` and `sysconf.out`, contain grid and system-related information, respectively.

**Important:** some visualization packages need the information stored in `*.out` files. We thus strongly recommend to backup these files together with the actual datafiles.

**Note:** Restart is possible only using the `.dbl` or `.dbl.h5` data formats.

### 8.1.1 Binary Output: `dbl` or `flt` data formats

Binary data can be dumped to disk at a given time step as i) one single file containing all variables (by selecting `single_file` in `pluto.ini`) or ii) as a set of separate files for each variable (`multiple_files`). We recommend the second option for large data sets. The base name is set to `data` for a single data file containing all of the fields, or takes the name of the corresponding variable if multiple sets are preferred, see Table 8.1.

Restart can be performed from double precision binary data files by invoking **PLUTO** with the `-restart n` command line option, where `n` is the output file number from which to restart. In this case an additional file (`restart.out`) will be dumped to disk.

The corresponding log file (`dbl.out` or `flt.out`) is a multi-column ascii files of the form:

```

.      .      .      .      .      .      .      .      ...
.      .      .      .      .      .      .      .      ...
.      .      .      .      .      .      .      .      ...
nout   t      dt      nstep single_file little var1 var2 ...
.      .      .      .      .      .      .      .      ...
.      .      .      .      .      .      .      .      ...

```

where `nout`, `t`, `dt` and `nstep` are, respectively, the file number, time, time step and integration step at the time of writing. The next column (`single_file/multiple_files`) tells whether a single-file or multiple-files are expected. The following one (`little/big`) gives the endianness of the architecture, whereas the remaining columns list the variable names and their order in this particular format.

**Default:** The default is to write ALL fields in `dbl` format, whereas to exclude staggered magnetic field components (if any) from the `flt` format.

### 8.1.2 HDF5 Output: `dbl.h5` or `flt.h5` data formats

HDF5 output format can be used in the static grid version if **PLUTO** has been successfully compiled with the serial or parallel version of the HDF5 library, see §2.2.2.

The file extension is `.h5` (and *not* `.hdf5` as used by **PLUTO-Chombo** data files, §9.6) and output files are written in *Pixie* format, a single-block, rectilinear mesh file using HDF5, may be related to the Polar Ionospheric X-Ray Imaging Experiment.

The conventions used in writing `.dbl.h5` or `.flt.h5` files are the same ones adopted for the `.dbl` and `.flt` data formats. However, with HDF5, all variables are written to a single file.

*Pixie* files can be opened and visualized directly by different softwares, like *VisIt* and *Paraview*. Since we have found compatibility issues with some versions of these visualization softwares, each file comes along with a supplementary `.xmf` text file in XDMF format that describes the content of the corresponding HDF5 file and can be opened correctly by *VisIt* and *Paraview*, see §8.3.2.

Restart can be performed from double precision HDF5 data files by invoking **PLUTO** with the `-h5restart n` command line option (§1.4.1), where `n` is the output file number from which to restart. In this case an additional file (`restart.out`) will be dumped to disk.

**Default:** The default is to write ALL fields in `.dbl.h5` format, whereas to exclude staggered magnetic field components (if any) from the `.flt.h5` format.

### 8.1.3 VTK Output: vtk data format

VTK (from the Visualization ToolKit format) output follows essentially the same conventions used for the .dbl or .flt outputs. Single or multiple VTK files can be written by specifying either *single\_file* or *multiple\_files* in your pluto.ini and data values are always written using single precision with byte order set to big endian.

The mesh topology uses a rectilinear grid format for *CARTESIAN* or *CYLINDRICAL* geometry while a structured grid format is employed for *POLAR* or *SPHERICAL* geometries. Scalar quantities (such as pressure or density) are always saved with the “scalar” attribute whereas vector fields (velocity and magnetic field) can be saved either as:

- scalar components when `VTK_VECTOR_DUMP` is set to *NO* (default); In this case, single components are not transformed to Cartesian.
- as vector field (i.e. with the “vector” attribute) when `VTK_VECTOR_DUMP` is set to *YES*. In this case, vector components are automatically transformed to Cartesian.

The symbolic constant `VTK_VECTOR_DUMP` can be defined in `definitions.h`, see Table B.1 in §2.1.11.

Both scalar fields and vectors are written with the *CELL\_DATA* attribute and grid nodes (or vertices) are used to store the mesh. If a VTK file is written to disk, the log file `vtk.out` is updated in the same manner as `dbl.out` or `flt.out`.

**Default:** By default, all variables except staggered magnetic field components (if any) are written.

### 8.1.4 ASCII Output: tab Data format

The *tab* format may be used for one dimensional data or relatively small two dimensional arrays in serial mode only. We warn that this output is not supported in parallel mode. The output consists in multi-column ascii files named `data.nnnn.tab` of the form:

```

.      .      .      .      .      .
.      .      .      .      .      .
x(i)   y(j)   var1(i,j)  var2(i,j)  var3(i,j) ...
.      .      .      .      .      .
.      .      .      .      .      .
.      .      .      .      .      .

```

where the index  $j$  changes faster and a blank records separates blocks with different  $i$  index.

**Default:** By default, all variables except staggered magnetic field components (if any) are written.

### 8.1.5 Graphic Output: ppm and png data formats

PLUTO allows to take two-dimensional slices in the  $x_1x_2$ ,  $x_1x_3$  or  $x_2x_3$  planes and save the results as color ppm or png images. The Portable Pixmap (ppm) format is quite inefficient and redundant although easy to write on any platform since it does not require additional libraries. The Portable Network Graphics (png) is a bitmap image format that employs lossless data compression. It requires libpng to be installed on your system.

Different images are associated with different variables and can have different sets of attributes defined by the `Image` structure. An image structure has the following customizable elements:

- `slice_plane`: a label (*X12\_PLANE*, *X13\_PLANE*, *X23\_PLANE*) setting the slicing 2D plane.
- `slice_coord`: a real number specifying the coordinate orthogonal to `slice_plane`.
- `max,min`: the maximum and minimum values to which the image is scaled to. If `max=min` autoscaling is used;
- `logscale`: an integer (0 or 1) specifying a linear or logarithmic scale;
- `colormap`: the colormap. Available options are “red” (red map) “br” (blue-red), “bw” (black and white), “blue” (blue), “green” (green).

In 2D the default is always `slice_plane = X12_PLANE` and `slice_coord = 0`. Image attributes can be set independently for each variable in the function **ChangeDumpVar ()** in `Src/userdef_output.c`, see §8.2.1.

**Default:** By default, only density is written.

### 8.1.6 The grid.out output file

The `grid.out` file contains information about the computational grid used during the simulation. It is an ASCII file starting with a comment-header containing the creation date, dimension and geometry of the grid:

```
# *****
# PLUTO 4.1 Grid File
# Generated on <date>
#
# DIMENSIONS: <DIMENSIONS>
# GEOMETRY: <GEOMETRY>
# X1: [ <x1_beg>, <x1_end>], <nx1> point(s), <ngh> ghosts
# X2: [ <x2_beg>, <x2_end>], <nx2> point(s), <ngh> ghosts
# X3: [ <x3_beg>, <x3_end>], <nx3> point(s), <ngh> ghosts
# *****
```

The rest of the file is made up of 3 sections, one for each dimension, giving the (interior) number of point followed by a tabulated multi-column list containing (from left to right) the point number, left and right cell interfaces:

```
nx1
      .           .           .
      .           .           .
      .           .           .
<point number>  <cell left edge>  <cell right edge>
      .           .           .
      .           .           .
      .           .           .
```

and similarly for the  $x_2$  and  $x_3$  directions.

## 8.2 Customizing your output

Output can be customized by editing two functions in the source file `Src/userdef_output.c` in the **PLUTO** distribution. We recommend to copy this file into your working directory and modify the default settings, if necessary. Changes can be made by i) introducing new additional variables and ii) altering the default attributes.

### 8.2.0.1 Writing Supplementary Variables

New variables can be written to disk in any of the available formats previously described. The number and names of these extra variables is set in your `pluto.ini` initialization file under the label “uservar”. The function **ComputeUserVar ()** (located inside `Src/userdef_output.c`) tells **PLUTO** how these variables are computed.

As an example, suppose we want to compute and write temperature ( $T = p/\rho$ ) and the  $z$  component of vorticity ( $\omega = \partial_x v_y - \partial_y v_x$ ). Then one has to set

```
uservar 2 T vortz
```

in your `pluto.ini` under the `[Static Grid Output]` block. This informs **PLUTO** that 2 additional variables named `T` and `vortz` have to be saved. They are computed at each output by editing the function **ComputeUserVar ()**:

```
void ComputeUserVar (const Data *d, Grid *grid)
{
    int i,j,k;
    double ***T, ***vortz;
    double ***p, ***rho, ***vx, ***vy;
    double *dx, *dy;

    T = GetUserVar("T");
    vortz = GetUserVar("vortz");

    rho = d->Vc[RHO]; /* pointer shortcut to density */
    p = d->Vc[PRS]; /* pointer shortcut to pressure */
    vx = d->Vc[VX1]; /* pointer shortcut to x-velocity */
    vy = d->Vc[VX2]; /* pointer shortcut to y-velocity */

    dx = grid[IDIR].dx; /* shortcut to dx */
    dy = grid[JDIR].dx; /* shortcut to dy */

    DOM_LOOP(k,j,i) {
        T[k][j][i] = p[k][j][i]/rho[k][j][i];
        vortz[k][j][i] = 0.5*(vy[k][j][i+1] - vy[k][j][i-1])/dx[i]
            - 0.5*(vx[k][j+1][i] - vx[k][j-1][i])/dy[j];
    }
}
```

**PLUTO** automatically allocates static memory area for the new variables `T` and `vortz` when calling the **GetUserVar ()** function. The **DOM\_LOOP** macro performs a loop on the whole computational domain (boundary excluded) in order to compute `T[k][j][i]` and `vortz[k][j][i]`. Once **PLUTO** runs, these two variables will automatically be written in all selected formats (except for the ppm and png formats), by default.

Beware that if the number of `uservar` is reset to zero but the previous function is still executed, a segmentation fault error will occur since user-defined variables (such as `T` and `vortz` in the example above) have not been allocated into memory.

In order to change the default attributes, follow the example in the next subsection.

### 8.2.1 Changing Attributes

Defaults attributes (which variables in which output have to be written, image attributes) can be easily changed through the function **ChangeDumpVar ()** located in the file `Src/userdef_output.c`.

To include/exclude a variable from a certain output type, use **SetDumpVar ()** (`var`, `type`, `YES/NO`). Here “`var`” is a string containing the name of a variable listed in Table 8.1 or an additional one defined in your `pluto.ini`. The “`type`” argument can take any value among: `DBL_OUTPUT`, `FLT_OUTPUT`,

*VTX\_OUTPUT*, *DBL\_H5\_OUTPUT*, *FLT\_H5\_OUTPUT*, *TAB\_OUTPUT*, *PPM\_OUTPUT*, *PNG\_OUTPUT*. This is a sketch of how this function may be used:

```
void ChangeDumpVar ()
{
    Image *image; /* a pointer to an image structure */

    SetDumpVar("bx1", FLT_OUTPUT, NO);
    SetDumpVar("prs", PPM_OUTPUT, YES);
    SetDumpVar("vortz", PNG_OUTPUT, YES);

    image = GetImage ("rho");
    image->slice_plane = X13_PLANE;
    image->slice_coord = 1.1;
    image->max = image->min = 0.0;
    image->logscale = 1;
    image->colormap = "red";
}
```

In this example, the variable “bx1” is excluded from the *flt* output, “prs” and “vortz” (defined in the previous example) are added to the *ppm* and *png* outputs, respectively. Furthermore, the default image attributes of “rho” (included by default) are changed to represent a cut (in log scale, red colormap) in the *xz* plane at the point coordinate  $y = 1.1$  in the *y*-direction.

Note that the default for *.dbl* or *.dbl.h5* datasets should never be changed since restarting from a given file requires ALL variables being evolved in time.

## 8.3 Visualization

**PLUTO** data files can be read with a variety of commercial and open source packages. In what follows we describe how **PLUTO** data files can be read and visualized with IDL<sup>2</sup>, VisIt<sup>3</sup>, ParaView<sup>4</sup>, py**PLUTO** (§8.3.3), Mathematica<sup>5</sup> and Gnuplot<sup>6</sup>.

We recall that reading of *.dbl* or *.flt* files must be complemented by grid information which is stored in a separate file (*grid.out*). On the other hand, VTK and HDF5 files (*.xmf* / *.h5* , *.vtk* or *.hdf5*) are “stand-alones” in the sense that they embed grid information and can be opened alone.

### 8.3.1 Visualization with IDL

IDL (Interactive Data Language) is a vectorized programming language commonly used in the astronomical community for interactive processing of large amounts of data. The **PLUTO** code distribution comes with a number of useful routines written in the IDL programming language to read and visualize data written with **PLUTO** . Several functions and procedures for data visualization and analysis can be found in the Tools/IDL directory which we strongly advise adding to the IDL search path. IDL function documentation can be found in Doc/idl.tools.html.

**The PLOAD Procedure** The PLOAD procedure can be considered the main driver for reading data stored in one of the following formats: *.dbl*, *.flt*, *.vtk*, *.dbl.h5*, *.flt.h5* or *.hdf5*. PLOAD requires the information stored in the corresponding data log file (e.g. *grid.out*, *dbl.out*, *flt.out*, etc...) to initialize common block variables and grid information shared by other functions and procedures in the Tools/IDL/ subdirectory. Because of this reason, it should always be called at the very beginning of an IDL session. For example:

```
IDL> ; Read all variables from the the third output in double precision
IDL> ; and store it into memory {rho, vx1, vx2, prs, ...}
IDL> PLOAD,3

IDL> ; Read only pressure from the fifth output in single precision
IDL> ; and store it into memory
IDL> PLOAD,5,/FLOAT, VAR="prs"

IDL> ; Read output 9 from the directory "Large_Data/", do not store it
IDL> ; into memory but use IDL file association (preferred for large datasets):
IDL> PLOAD,dir="Large_Data/",9,/ASSOC
```

By default, PLOAD tries to read binary data in double precision if *dbl.out* is present. To select a different format, a corresponding keyword must be supplied (e.g. */FLOAT*, */H5* or */HDF5* or a combination of them, see Doc/idl.tools.html).

When PLOAD is called for the first time, it initializes the following four common blocks:

- **PLUTO\_GRID**: contains grid information such as the number of points (*nx1*, *nx2*, *nx3*), coordinates (*x1*, *x2*, *x3*) and mesh spacing (*dx1*, *dx2*, *dx3*);
- **PLUTO\_VAR**: the number (NVAR) and the names of variables being written for the chosen format. Variable names follow the same convention adopted in **PLUTO** , e.g., *rho*, *vx1*, *vx2*, ..., *bx1*, *bx2*, *prs*, .. and so on;
- **PLUTO\_RUN**: time stepping information such as output time (*t*), time step (*dt*) and total number of files (*nlast*).

PLOAD can be used inside a normal IDL script, after it has been invoked at least once (or compiled with *.r pload*).

<sup>2</sup><http://www.exelisvis.com/>

<sup>3</sup><https://wci.llnl.gov/codes/visit/home.html>

<sup>4</sup><http://www.paraview.org/>

<sup>5</sup><http://www.wolfram.com>

<sup>6</sup><http://www.gnuplot.info>

**The DISPLAY Procedure** DISPLAY is a general-purpose visualization routine and the source code can be found in Tools/IDL/display.pro The DISPLAY procedure can be used to display the intensity map of a 2D variable to a graphic window, e.g.,

```
IDL> PLOAD,3 ; load the third data set in double precision
IDL> DISPLAY,x1=x1,x2=x2,alog10(rho), title='Density',/vbar
IDL> DISPLAY,x1=x1,x2=x2,vx1,title='X-Velocity',nwin=1
```

The second line displays the density logarithm and the third line displays the  $x_1$  component of velocity in a new window.

Another example, shown in Fig. 8.1, shows how to visualize magnetic pressure and density in two different windows and overplot the velocity field.

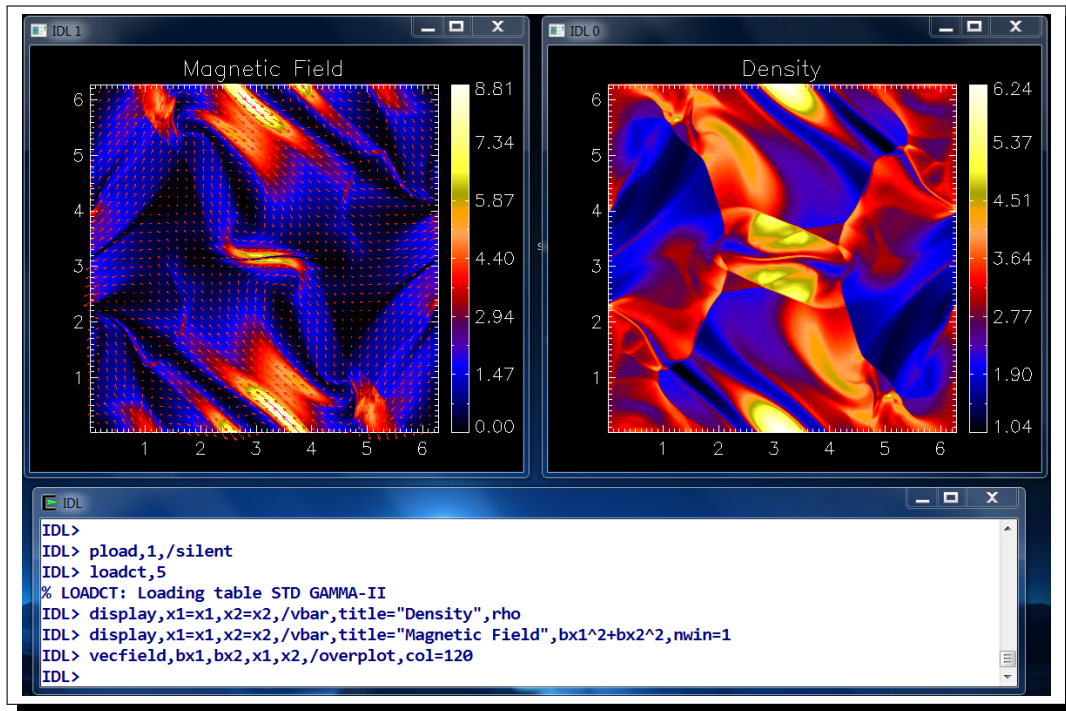


Figure 8.1: An example of visualization in IDL using the `display.pro` routine.

For more details, consult [Doc/idl\\_tools.html](http://Doc/idl_tools.html).

### 8.3.2 Visualization with VisIt or ParaView

PLUTO data written using VTK or HDF5 (both *.h5* and *.hdf5* files) formats can be easily visualized using either *VisIt* or *ParaView* available at <https://wci.llnl.gov/codes/visit/home.html> and <http://www.paraview.org/>, respectively. *VisIt* is an open source interactive parallel visualization and graphical analysis tool for viewing scientific data. *ParaView* is an open source mutiple-platform application for interactive, scientific visualization.

An example is shown in Fig. 8.2 for both software packages.

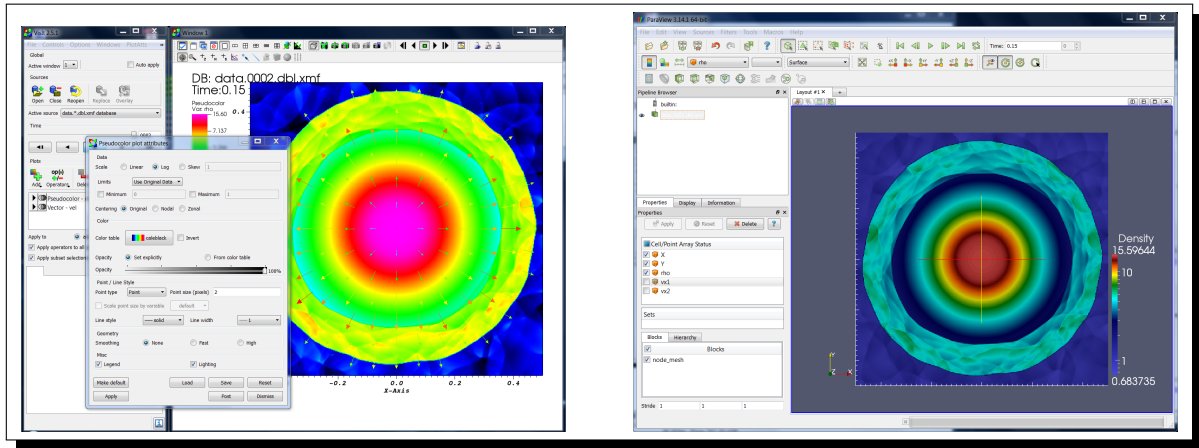


Figure 8.2: An example of visualization of an *.xmf* (*.h5*) data file using *VisIt* (left) or *ParaView* (right).

**Visualization of HDF5 files.** Both *VisIt* and *Paraview* interpret the cell-centered grid and data contained in the Pixie files as node-centered: as a consequence, the first and the last half cells in every direction are clipped from the images (e.g. a small sector around  $\phi = 0$  is chopped from a periodic polar plot covering the  $2\pi$  angle).

Therefore, for every *.h5* file, PLUTO writes also a *.xmf* text file in XDMF format that describes the content of the corresponding HDF5 file. The *.xmf* files can be directly opened by *VisIt* and *ParaView*, so as to provide the correct data centering and avoid the image clipping. Besides, we noticed that the Pixie reader crashes (e.g. using *ParaView* 3.14 - 3.98) or incorrectly reads the *.h5* files (e.g. using *VisIt* versions after 2.6), while all versions of both *VisIt* and *Paraview* properly open the *.xmf* files. All the variables are read as scalar quantities.

**Visualization of VTK files.** PLUTO writes *.vtk* files using a cell-centered attribute rather than point-centered (as in previous versions). Although this has not been found to be a problem for *VisIt*, many filters in *ParaView* (such as streamlines) may require to apply a *Cell Data to Point Data* filter.



### 8.3.3 Visualization with pyPLUTO

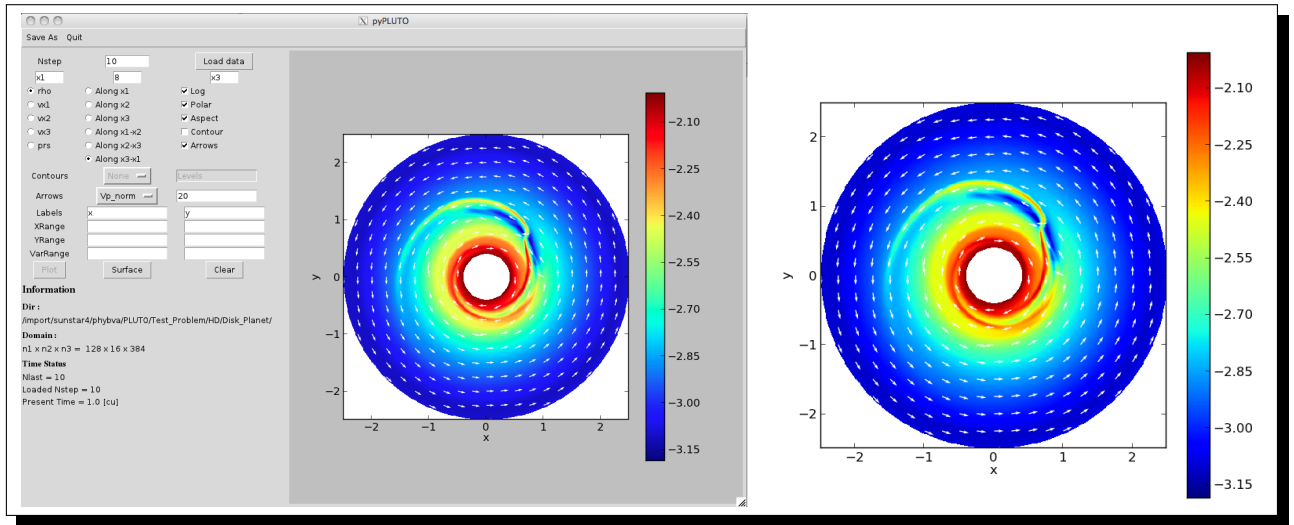


Figure 8.3: An example of visualization with the pyPLUTO tool.

Binary data files (.dbl, .flt) and VTK files (.vtk) can be visualized using the pyPLUTO code. This tool is included in the current code distribution in the directory `Tools/pyPLUTO/` and provides python modules (Python version  $> 2.7$  is recommended) to load, visualize and analyse data. Additionally, for the purpose of a quick check, Graphic User Interface (GUI) is provided (requires Python Tkinter). Details of the Installation and Getting Started can be found in the `Doc/pyPLUTO.html`.

On successful installation, the user can load data in the following manner:

```
> ipython --pylab
In [1]: import pyPLUTO as pp
# for loading data.0010.dbl
In [2]: D = pp.pload(10,w_dir=<path to data dir>)
# for loading data.0010.flt
In [3]: D = pp.pload(10,w_dir=<path to data dir>, datatype='float')
```

Here, `D` is a pload object that has all the information regarding the variable names and their values which are stored as arrays. It also has the respective grid and time information. For example, `D.x1` is the numpy x-array, `D.rho` - is the numpy density array, `D.vx1` - is the numpy vx1 array and so on. These numpy arrays can be easily visualized using matplotlib, python's plotting library. The pyPLUTO's also provides two classes - `Image` and `Tools`. They have some frequently used functions for analysis and data plotting. Details about these classes along with their usage can be found in HTML document referred above.

In order to use the GUI version for visualizing the data, append `$PATH` variable to the bin folder where the executable `GUI_pyPLUTO.py` exists after the installation of source code (see installation notes in `Doc/pyPLUTO.html`) and then apply the following commands in the data directory -

```
> GUI_pyPLUTO.py                                # default is for .dbl files
> GUI_pyPLUTO.py --float                         # for .flt files
> GUI_pyPLUTO.py --vtk                           # for .vtk files
```

Along with the code, an example folder with some sample .py files are provided for certain test problems. The source codes from these files along with their outputs are listed in the HTML documentation.

It is required to first run the respective test problem and generate the data files, after which the user can run the sample .py files as follows from the `Tools/pyPLUTO/examples` folder:

```
> python samplefile.py
```

where the `samplefile.py` are listed in 8.2,

Table 8.2: List of sample .py files provided in the Tools/pyPLUTO/examples folder

samplefile.py	Test Problem
sod.py	HD/Sod
Rayleigh_taylor.py	HD/Rayleigh_Taylor
stellar_wind.py	HD/Stellar_Wind
jet.py	MHD/Jet
orszag_tang.py	MHD/Orszag_Tang
Sph_disk.py	MHD/FARGO/Spherical_Disk
flow_past_cyc.py	HD/Viscosity/Flow_Past_Cylinder

### 8.3.4 Visualization with Gnuplot

Gnuplot can be used to visualize relatively small or moderately large 1- or 2D datasets written with the tabulated (.tab) or binary data formats (.dbl or .flt)<sup>7</sup>. Gnuplot can be started at the command line by simply typing

```
> gnuplot
```

In the following we give a short summary of the available options while a more detailed documentation can be found in Doc/gnuplot.html.

**Ascii Data Files.** If you enabled the .tab output format in pluto.ini, you can plot 1D data from, e.g., the first output file by typing

```
gnuplot> plot "data.0001.tab" u 1:3 title "Density"
gnuplot> replot "data.0001.tab" u 1:5 title "Pressure" # overplot
```

Here the first column corresponds to the  $x$  coordinate, the second column to the  $y$  coordinate and flow data values start from the third column. Fig. 8.4 shows the density and pressure profiles for the Sod shock tube problem (conf. #03 in Test-Problems/HD/Sod) using the previous commands.

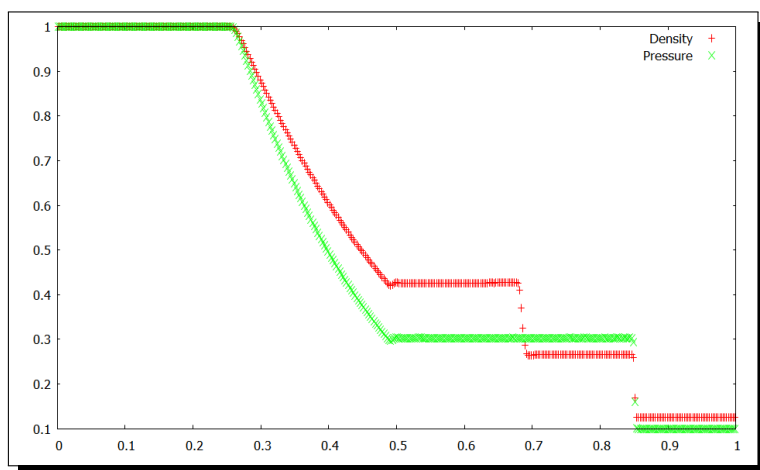


Figure 8.4: Density and pressure plots for the Sod shock tube using Gnuplot.

Two-dimensional ascii datafiles can also be visualized using the `splot` command. Fig. 8.5 shows a simple contour drawing of the final solution of the Mach reflection test problem (remember to enable .tab output) using

```
gnuplot> set contour
gnuplot> set cntrparam level incremental 0.1,0.2,20 # Uniform levels from 0.1 to 20
gnuplot> set view map
gnuplot> unset surface
gnuplot> unset key
gnuplot> splot "data.0001.tab" u 1:2:3 w lines
```

**Binary Data Files.** Starting with Gnuplot 4.2, raw binary files are also supported. In this case, grid information (being stored in separate files) must be supplied explicitly through appropriate keywords making the syntax a little awkward.

To ease up this task, one can take advantage of the scripts provided with the code distribution in Tools/Gnuplot. For this, we recommend to define the `GNUPLLOT_LIB` environment variable (in your shell) which will be appended to the loadpath of Gnuplot:

```
> export GNUPLLOT_LIB=$PLUTO_DIR/Tools/Gnuplot # use setenv for tcsh users
```

You can also define the loadpath directly from Gnuplot:

```
gnuplot> set loadpath '<pluto_full_path>/Tools/Gnuplot'
```

<sup>7</sup>Version 4.2 or higher is recommended.

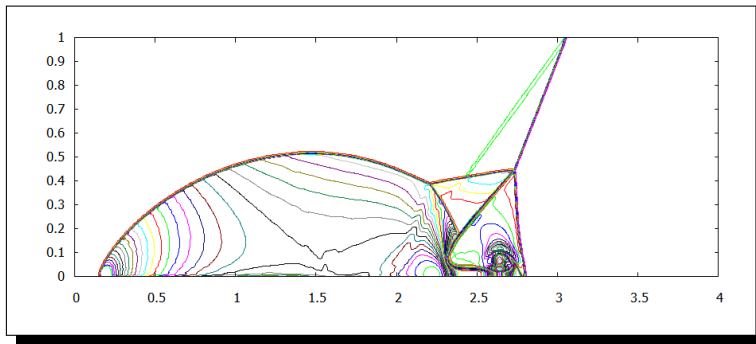


Figure 8.5: Density and pressure plots for the Sod shock tube using Gnuplot.

A typical gnuplot session can be started as follows:

```
gnuplot> load "grid.gp"           # read and store grid information
gnuplot> dsize = 8; load "macros.gp"
gnuplot> load "pm3D_setting.gp"  # set the display canvas for pm3d plot style
```

The first line invokes the `grid.gp` script which is used to read grid information, the second script sets the data file size (8 or 4 for double or single precision) while the last one initializes a default environment for viewing binary data files using the `pm3d` style of Gnuplot.

For additional documentation and examples please refer to <Doc/gnuplot.html>.

### 8.3.5 Visualization with Mathematica

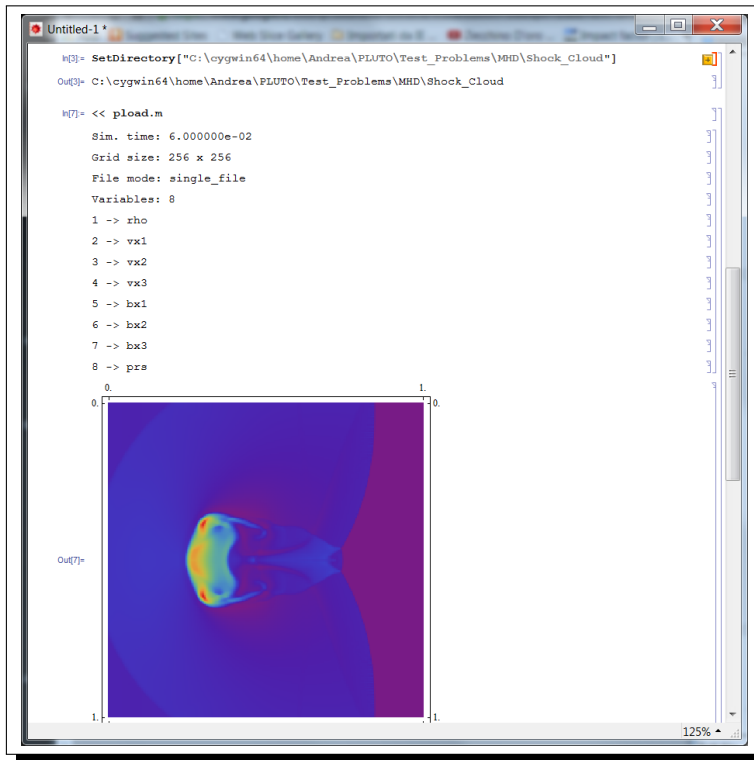


Figure 8.6: An example of visualization of a binary datafile with mathematica.

PLUTO data files can be displayed with Mathematica<sup>8</sup> using a notebook interface to create an interactive document. A simple reader interface is provided by Tools/Mathematica/pload.m and it can be launched to load and display binary datafiles written in single or double precision (.flt and .dbl). Data is stored into *lists* and can be handled using a variety of built-in functions in Mathematica. Grid and time information are also read from the .out log files and stored into the variables *nx* and *ny* (number of points), *t* (current time level), *nvar* (number of variables), *dt* (current time step).

A typical interactive session once you open an empty book is

```
AppendTo[$Path, ToFileName[{" /home/mignone/PLUTO/Tools/Mathematica"}]]
SetDirectory[" /home/mignone/PLUTO/Test_Problems/MHD/Shock_Cloud"]
<< pload.m
```

Please remember to type `Shift + Enter` after each line to make the Wolfram Language process your input. The first line simply adds the Tools/Mathematica directory to the path, the second line changes directory to the working location and the third invokes the reader. Once executed, `pload.m` reader prompts for the output number, single or double precision and then the variable to display. The output of this session is shown in Fig. 8.6 for the MHD Shock-Cloud interaction test (conf. #01 in Test\_Problems/MHD/Shock\_Cloud).

The function `ArrayPlot[]` is used to display 2D datasets and is directly included in the interface reader. For instance, to change colormap and visualize pressure in log scale, use

```
ArrayPlot[Log[data[[8]]], DataReversed -> True, ColorFunction -> "RoseColors",
  DataRange -> {{xmin, xmax}, {ymin, ymax}}]
```

For different colormaps, consult <http://reference.wolfram.com/language/guide/ColorSchemes.html>.

A 1D cut of pressure, for instance, through the *x* direction at constant *y* be plotted using

```
ListPlot[data[[8,ny/2]]]
```

The current directory can be displayed by typing `Directory[]` while the home directory can be shown by typing `$HomeDirectory`

<sup>8</sup><http://www.wolfram.com>

---

## 9. Adaptive Mesh Refinement (AMR)

---

**PLUTO** provides adaptive mesh refinement (AMR) functionality in 1, 2 and 3 dimensions through the Chombo library<sup>1</sup>. Chombo provides a distributed infrastructure for parallel calculations over block-structured, adaptively refined grids. **PLUTO**-Chombo is compatible with any of the available physics modules (i.e. *HD*, *MHD*, *RHD*, *RMHD*) and, starting with **PLUTO** 4.1, grid refinement is supported in all coordinate systems. Moreover, grid zones are no longer constrained to be equilateral but sides can have different lengths. Magnetic fields are evolved using cell-centered formulations (Powell's *EIGHT\_WAVES* or *DIV\_CLEANING*). Constrained transport is not yet available. I/O is provided by the Hierarchical Data Format (HDF5) library<sup>2</sup>, designed to store and organize large amounts of numerical data. A detailed presentation of the implementation method together with an extensive numerical test suite may be found in [33].

For compatibility reasons, not all the algorithms available with the static grid version of **PLUTO** have been extended to the AMR version. The AMR implementation of **PLUTO** is not compatible, at present, with:

- constrained-transport MHD;
- finite difference schemes;
- the ShearingBox module (§7.1)
- the FARGO module;
- Super-Time-Stepping integration for diffusion terms.

Some of the C functions normally used in the static grid version of **PLUTO** have been replaced by C++ codes, in order to interface the structure of **PLUTO** with the Chombo library. For instance, the main function `main.c` has been replaced by `amrPluto.cpp`.

### 9.1 Installation

In order to properly install **PLUTO**-Chombo, you will need (check also Table 1.1):

- C, C++ and Fortran compilers;
- the MPI library (for parallel runs).
- GNU make
- the Chombo library, available under free registration at <https://commons.lbl.gov/display/chombo>. We strongly recommend to download Chombo version 3.2.
- the HDF5 library available at <http://www.hdfgroup.org/HDF5/>. Chombo 3.2 should be compiled with `hdf5-1.8.x`;
- the `Chombo3.2patch.tar` provided with the **PLUTO** distribution, which replaces some of the library source files.

The following sections give a quick headstart on how these libraries can be built for being used by **PLUTO**. Please consult the libraries' respective documentation for additional information.

---

<sup>1</sup><https://commons.lbl.gov/display/chombo/>

<sup>2</sup><http://www.hdfgroup.org/HDF5/>

### 9.1.1 Installing HDF5

HDF5 1.8.x libraries should be installed before compiling Chombo. Beware that different builds are necessary for serial or parallel execution and, since in both cases library names are the same (by default), it is advisable to store them in separate locations. On a single-processor machine, serial libraries can be built, for example, using

```
> ./configure --prefix=/usr/local/HDF5-serial
> make
> make check      # optional
> make install
```

This will install the libraries under `/usr/local/HDF5-serial/lib`. If you do not have root privileges, choose a different location in your home directory (e.g. `$PLUTO_DIR/Lib/HDF5-serial`).

**Note:** The I/O of Chombo 3.2 has been updated to use the HDF5 1.8 API. However, if HDF5 1.6.x is installed on your system, the support for the 1.6 API is still provided by adding the `-DH5_USE_16_API` flag to the `HDFINCFLAGS` variable inside your `Make.defs.local`, see §9.1.2. Nevertheless, it is not guaranteed that the HDF5 1.6 API will be supported in future Chombo releases.

On multiple-processor architectures, parallel libraries can be built by specifying the name of the `mpicc` compiler in the `CC` variable and invoking `configure` with the `--enable-parallel` switch, e.g.,

```
> CC=mpicc ./configure --prefix=/usr/local/HDF5-parallel --enable-parallel # bash user
> make
> make check      # optional
> make install
```

This will install both shared (dynamic, `*.so`) and static (`*.a`) libraries. If you build shared libraries, the environment variable `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` should contain the full path name to your HDF5 library (e.g. `/usr/local/HDF5-serial/lib` in the example above). Please make sure to add, for example,

```
> setenv LD_LIBRARY_PATH /usr/local/HDF5-serial/lib:$LD_LIBRARY_PATH
```

to your `.tcshrc` if you're using the `tcsh` shell or

```
> export LD_LIBRARY_PATH="/usr/local/HDF5-serial/lib":$LD_LIBRARY_PATH
```

if you're using `bash`. If you do not want shared libraries, then add `--disable-shared` to the `configure` command.

### 9.1.2 Installing and Configuring Chombo

Chombo 3.2 can be downloaded by direct access to the SVN server repository after free registration. The Chombo source code distribution should be unpacked under `PLUTO/Lib/` and some of the library source files must be replaced using the `Chombo3.2Patch.tar` patch-archive provided with the **PLUTO** distribution. A typical session is

```
> # get the 3.2 release of Chombo
> svn --username username co https://anag-repo.lbl.gov/svn/Chombo/release/3.2 Chombo-3.2
> tar xvf Chombo3.2Patch.tar -C Chombo-3.2/ # apply PLUTO-Patch
```

In order to use Chombo, you may have to build different libraries depending on the chosen compiler, serial/parallel build, number of dimensions, optimizations, etc... If you intend to run **PLUTO-Chombo** for serial or parallel computations in one, two or three dimensions in we suggest to compile all possible configurations (that is 1, 2 and 3D serial or 1, 2 and 3D parallel). Libraries are automatically named by Chombo after the chosen configuration.

The default configuration can be set by editing manually `Chombo-3.2/lib/mk/Make.defs.local` where, depending on your local system and configuration, you need to set make variables. To this end:

```
> cd Chombo-3.2/lib
> make setup          # create Make.defs.local from template
> cd mk/
```

The command ‘make setup’ will create this file from a template that contains instructions for setting make variables that Chombo uses. These variables specify the default configuration to build, what compiler to use (together with its flags), where the HDF library can be found and so on.

At this point you should edit `Make.defs.local`. The normal procedure is to define a default configuration, e.g., 2D serial:

```
## Configuration variables
DIM                = 2
DEBUG              = FALSE
OPT                = TRUE
PRECISION          = DOUBLE
PROFILE            = FALSE
CXX                = /usr/bin/g++
FC                 = /usr/bin/g77
MPI                = FALSE
## Note: don't set the MPICXX variable if you don't have MPI installed
MPICXX             = mpic++
#OBJMODEL          =
#XTRACONFIG        =
## Optional features
#USE_64            =
#USE_COMPLEX       =
#USE_EB            =
#USE_CCSE          =
USE_HDF            = TRUE
HDFINCFLAGS        = -I/usr/local/lib/HDF5-serial/include
HDFLIBFLAGS        = -L/usr/local/lib/HDF5-serial/lib -lhdf5 -lz
## Note: don't set the HDFMPI* variables if you don't have parallel HDF installed
HDFMPIINCFLAGS     = -I/usr/local/lib/HDF5-parallel/include
HDFMPILIBFLAGS     = -L/usr/local/lib/HDF5-parallel/lib -lhdf5 -lz
```

Defaults are used for the remaining field beginning with a ‘#’.

Libraries can now be built under `Chombo-3.2/lib`, with

```
> make lib
```

Do not try `make all` since it won’t work after the Chombo patch file has been unpacked.

Alternative configurations can be made from the default one by specifying the configuration variables explicitly on the make command line. For example:

```
> make DIM=3 MPI=TRUE lib
```

will build the parallel version of the 3D library. Additional information may be found in the `Chombo/README` file and by consulting the library documentation.

## 9.2 Configuring and running PLUTO-Chombo

In order to configure **PLUTO** with Chombo, you must start the Python script with the `--with-chombo` option (Python assumes that Chombo libraries have been built under `PLUTO/Lib/Chombo-3.2`):

```
~/work> python $PLUTO_DIR/setup.py --with-chombo
```

This will use the default library configuration (2D serial in the example above).

To use a configuration different from the default one, enter the make configuration variables employed when building the library, e.g.:

```
~/work> python $PLUTO_DIR/setup.py --with-chombo: MPI=TRUE
```

(do not use spaces in `MPI=TRUE`). Note that the number of dimensions (`DIM`) is specified during the Python script and should **NOT** be given as a command line argument.

The setup proceeds normally as in the static grid case by choosing *Setup problem* from the Python script to change/configure your test problem. The makefile is then automatically created by the Python script by dumping Chombo makefile variables into the file `make.vars`, part of your local working directory. Although system dependencies have already been created during the Chombo compilation stage,



the `Change makefile` option from the Python menu is still used to specify the name and flags of the C compiler used to compile **PLUTO** source files. This step is achieved as usual, by selecting a suitable `.defs` file from the `Config/` directory, see §2.2. Beware that, during this step, additional variables such as `PARALLEL`, `USE_HDF5`, etc...(normally used in the static grid version) have no effect since Chombo has its own independent parallelization strategy and I/O. Fortran and C++ compilers are the same ones used to build the library.

Initial and boundary conditions are coded in the usual way but `definitions.h` and `pluto.ini` may contain some AMR-specific directives.

### 9.2.1 Running PLUTO-Chombo

Once **PLUTO-Chombo** has been compiled and the executable `pluto` has been created, **PLUTO** runs in the same way, i.e.

```
~/MyWorkDir> ./pluto [flags]
```

where the supported command line options are given in Table 1.3 in §1.4. Note that `-restart` *must* be followed by the restart (checkpoint) file number. An error will occur otherwise.

Parallel runs proceeds in the usual way, e.g.,

```
~/MyWorkDir> mpirun -np 8 ./pluto [flags]
```

Note that when running in parallel, each processor redirects the output on a separate file `pout.n` (instead of `pluto.log`) where  $n=0\dots N_p-1$  and  $N_p$  is the total number of processors. However, `pout.0` also contains additional information regarding the chosen configuration.

## 9.3 Header File definitions.h

The header file `definitions.h` has the same structure already described in §2.1. Few additional options are automatically added by the Python script to the additional switches listed in §2.1.12):

- `CHOMBO_EN_SWITCH` (*NO/YES*):  
When set to *YES*, AMR operations such as projection, coarse-to-fine prolongation and restriction are performed on the conserved entropy rather than on the total energy density. This has the advantage of preserving entropy and pressure positivity in those situations where kinetic and/or magnetic energies are the dominant contributions to the total energy density. By enabling this switch, however, total energy will not be conserved at a fine/coarse interface.
- `CHOMBO_REF_VAR` (*RHO/ENG/BX1/...*):  
Sets the name of the conservative variable used by Chombo when tagging zones for refinement. Allowed values are *RHO* (for density), *ENG* (for total energy), *MX1* (for normal component of momentum), etc... The default value is total energy density or density when there's no energy equation. Notice that, since `CHOMBO_REF_VAR` is one of the conservative variables used to perform prolongation and restriction operations, if `CHOMBO_EN_SWITCH` (see previous item) is set to *YES*, *ENG* indicates the conserved entropy, while if `CHOMBO_CONS_AM` is set to *YES* (see §B.3), *IMPHI* stands for the conserved angular momentum. The special value `-1` can be given to supply a user-defined variable instead (e.g. pressure or kinetic energy) using the `computeRefVar()` function. See §9.5 for more detail.

**Important:** owing to the different type of conserved variable names, the `CHOMBO_REF_VAR` should never be used inside pre-processor conditional statements; e.g.,

```
#if CHOMBO_REF_VAR == ENG /* !!! NO !!! */
/* Do something ... */
#endif
```

may have unpredictable results.

- **CHOMBO\_LOGR** (*YES/NO*) :  
Enable this switch if you want to produce an equally-spaced logarithmic grid in the radial direction in *POLAR* or *SPHERICAL* coordinates. A logarithmic grid has the advantage of preserving the cell aspect ratio both close to and far away from the origin.

## 9.4 The pluto.ini initialization file

The `pluto.ini` initialization file described in §2.3 still retains its functionality as in the static grid version of the code. Two new blocks are read:

```
...

[Chombo Refinement]
Levels                4
Ref_ratio             2 2 2 2 2
Regrid_interval      2 2 2 2
Refine_thresh        0.3
Tag_buffer_size       3
Block_factor          8
Max_grid_size        64
Fill_ratio            0.8

...

[Chombo HDF5 output]
Checkpoint_interval   -1.0 0
Plot_interval         1.0 0
```

The `[Grid]` block is used to specify the base grid, corresponding to level 0. Only a single uniform patch per dimension should be specified. Also, the domain size and number of zones for each direction must be such that equally-sized zones are created (i.e. squares in 2D and cubes in 3D).

The `[Chombo Refinement]` and `[Chombo HDF5 output]` blocks can be used to control the refinement criteria and HDF5 output, respectively. The `[Static Grid output]` block is completely ignored with **PLUTO-Chombo**.

### 9.4.1 The `[Chombo Refinement]` Block

This block sets all the relevant parameters for refinement:

- **Levels** (*integer*)  
set the finest allowable refinement level, starting from the base grid (level 0) defined by the `[Grid]` block. 0 means there will be no refinement.
- **Ref\_ratio** (*integer*) (*integer*) (...)  
set the refinement ratios between all levels. First number is ratio between levels 0 and 1, second is between levels 1 and 2, etc. There must be at least **Levels**+1 elements or an error will result.
- **Regrid\_interval** (*integer*) (*integer*) (...)  
set the number of timesteps to compute between regridding. A negative value means there will be no regridding. There must be at least **Levels** elements or an error will result.
- **Refine\_thresh** (*double*)  
set the threshold value  $\chi_r$  above which cells are tagged for refinement during the grid generation process, see §9.5. When  $\chi(U) > \chi_r = \mathbf{Refine\_thresh}$ , the cell is tagged to be refined.
- **Tag\_buffer\_size** (*integer*)  
set the amount by which to grow tags (as a safety factor) before passing to MeshRefine.
- **Block\_factor** (*integer*)  
set the number of times that grids will be coarsenable by a factor of 2. A higher number produces "blockier" grids.

- **Max\_grid\_size** (*integer*)  
set the largest allowable size of a grid in any direction. Any boxes larger than that will be split up to satisfy this constraint.
- **Fill\_ratio** (*double*)  
a real number between 0 and 1 used to set the efficiency of the grid generation process. Lower number means that more extra cells which are not tagged for refinement wind up being refined along with tagged cells. The tradeoff is that higher fill ratios lead to more complicated grids, and the extra coarse-fine interface work may outweigh the savings due to the reduced number of fine-level cells.

### 9.4.2 The [Chombo HDF5 output] Block

Similarly to the [Static Grid Output], this block controls how often restart and plot files are dumped to disk:

- **Checkpoint\_interval** (*double*) (*integer*)  
set the output frequency in time (*double*) and/or in number of timesteps (*integer*) between writing checkpoint (restart) files. Negative number means that checkpoint files are never written, 0 means that checkpoint files are written before the initial timestep and after the final one.
- **Plot\_interval** (*double*) (*integer*)  
set the output frequency in time (*double*) and/or number of timesteps (*integer*) between writing plotfiles. Negative number means that plotfiles are never written, 0 means that plotfiles are written before the initial timestep and after the final one.

Output files are stored using the HDF5 file format and numbered as `data.nnnn.hdf5` where `n` is a zero-padded, sequentially increasing integer (as for the static grid output, §8.1). Data files contain primitive variables where checkpoint files contain conservative variables.

## 9.5 Controlling Refinement

Zones are tagged for refinement whenever a prescribed function  $\chi(U)$  of the conserved variables and of its derivatives exceeds the threshold value  $\chi_r$  assigned to **Refine\_thresh** in your `pluto.ini`. Generally speaking, the refinement criterion may be problem-dependent thus requiring the user to provide an appropriate definition of  $\chi(U)$ .

A standard criterion based on the second derivative error norm [25] is implemented in the function **computeRefGradient()** in the source file `Src/Chombo/TagCells.cpp`. The test function adopted for this purpose is

$$\chi(U) = \sqrt{\frac{\sum_d |\Delta_{d,+\frac{1}{2}}U - \Delta_{d,-\frac{1}{2}}U|^2}{\sum_d (|\Delta_{d,+\frac{1}{2}}U| + |\Delta_{d,-\frac{1}{2}}U| + \epsilon U_{d,\text{ref}})^2}} \quad (9.1)$$

where  $U \in \mathbf{U}$  is a conserved variable (see §9.3),  $\Delta_{d,\pm\frac{1}{2}}U$  are the undivided forward and backward differences in the direction  $d$ , e.g.,  $\Delta_{x,\pm\frac{1}{2}}U = \pm(U_{i\pm1} - U_i)$  (see also section 4.1 in [33]). The last term appearing in the denominator,  $U_{d,\text{ref}}$ , prevents regions of small ripples from being refined and it is defined by

$$U_{x,\text{ref}} = |U_{i+1}| + 2|U_i| + |U_{i-1}| \quad (9.2)$$

with  $\epsilon = 0.01$  (similar expressions hold when  $d = x_2$  or  $d = x_3$ ). Note, however, that  $\chi(U)$  may become ill-defined if  $U_{x,\text{ref}}$  changes sign. This occurs, for example, when  $U$  is a vector component (e.g. momentum or magnetic field) and a better solution would be to replace  $U_{d,\text{ref}}$  with a constant reference value.

A different variable  $q = q(U)$  (e.g.  $q = m_x^2/2\rho$ ) can be used to replace  $U$  in Eq. (9.1) by copying the source file `Src/Chombo/TagCells.cpp` in your local working area, setting `CHOMBO_REF_VAR` to `-1` (see §9.3) and defining the appropriate expression through the function **computeRefVar()**.

## 9.6 Reading and Visualizing HDF5 Files

HDF5 is a data model, library, and file format for storing and managing large amounts of data. It supports an unlimited variety of datatypes and is designed for flexible and efficient I/O.

HDF5 data can be visualized by a number of commercial or open source packages and, at present, Chombo data files have been successfully opened and visualized with IDL<sup>3</sup>, VisIt<sup>4</sup>, ParaView<sup>5</sup> and pyPLUTO. Examples are provided in the following. A comprehensive list of application software using HDF5 may be found at <http://www.hdfgroup.org/tools5app.html>. A set of utilities for manipulating, visualizing and converting HDF5 data files is provided by H5utils, a set of utilities available at [http://www.hdfgroup.org/products/hdf5\\_tools/](http://www.hdfgroup.org/products/hdf5_tools/). H5utils offers a simple tool for batch visualization as PNG images and also includes programs to convert HDF5 datasets into the formats required by other free visualization software (e.g. plain text, Vis5d and VTK).

In what follows we describe some of the routines provided with **PLUTO-Chombo** for viewing and analyzing HDF5 data in the IDL programming language.

### 9.6.1 Visualization with IDL

**PLUTO-Chombo** comes with a set of visualization routines for the IDL programming language. For more information consult [idl\\_tools.html](http://www.pluto-code.org/idl_tools.html).

The procedure **HDF5LOAD** (located in `/Tools/IDL/hdf5load.pro`) can read a HDF5 data file and store its content on the usual set of variables used during a typical IDL session. **HDF5LOAD** is directly called from **PLOAD** (§8.3.1) when the latter is invoked with the `/HDF5` keyword. For instance, in order to read `data.0001.hdf5` at the equivalent resolution provided by the 4<sup>th</sup> refinement level, you need

```
IDL> pload, /hdf5,2,level=4 # will load data.0002.hdf5, ref level = 4
```

Note that IDL re-interpolates the required dataset to a uniform mesh with resolution given by the specified refinement level.

As an example, we show how to visualize the density map for the relativistic Kelvin-Helmholtz test problem as in Fig. 9.1 corresponding to the output of configuration # 03 of `Test_Problems/RMHD/KH`.

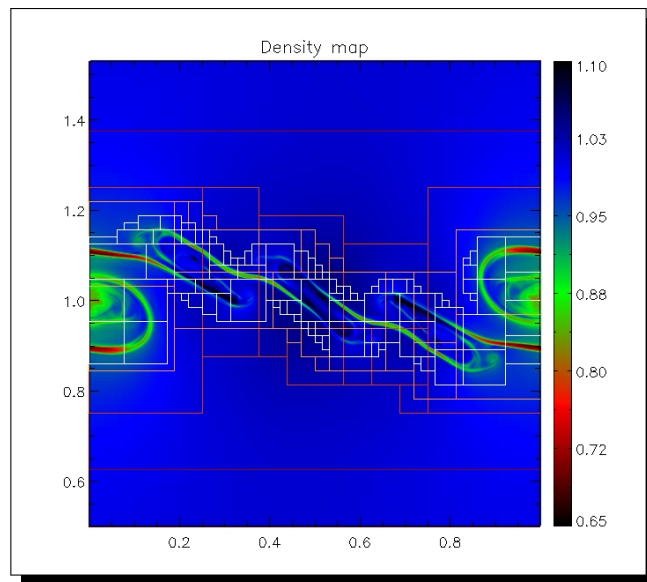


Figure 9.1: Density maps of the relativistic Kelvin-Helmholtz test problem, at  $t = 5$ . Refinement levels are displayed, using the `oplotbox` routine.

The figure has been produced with the following IDL commands:

<sup>3</sup><http://www.exelisvis.com/>

<sup>4</sup><https://wci.llnl.gov/codes/visit/home.html>

<sup>5</sup><http://www.paraview.org/>

```
IDL> PLOAD, /HDF5, dir="DATA_03", 5, lev=4, x2range=[0.5,1.5]
IDL> LOADCT, 6
IDL> DISPLAY, x1=x1, x2=x2, /vbar, rho, imax=1.1, imin=0.65, title="Density map"
IDL> OPLOTBOX, ctab=3
```

The last command (OPLOTBOX) overplots the levels of refinement, utilizing the color table 3. If you are plotting a 2D map in curvilinear coordinates (polar or spherical) using the DISPLAY procedure setting the /POLAR keyword, you can use the same /POLAR keyword for the OPLOTBOX procedure to correctly overplot the levels of refinement.

**Reading Large Datasets.** It may occur that the dataset one wishes to load exceeds the available memory. In that case, it is useful to load only a portion of it. This can be accomplished by specifying sub-domain through the keywords x1range, x2range and x3range. For instance:

```
IDL> PLOAD, /hdf5, 5, lev=6, x1range=[0.25,0.75], x2range=[0.75,1.25]
      # will load data.0005.2d.hdf5, ref level = 6
      # but only inside the region x in [0.25,0.75], y in [0.75,1.25]
IDL> DISPLAY, x1=x1, x2=x2, rho, nwin=1, imax=1.1, imin=0.65
IDL> OPLOTBOX, ctab=3
```

### 9.6.2 Visualization with VisIt

VisIt can read Chombo HDF5 datafiles. Individual .hdf5 files or databases can be opened and visualized from the GUI in exactly the same way as .vtk or .h5 files and level plots can be over-imposed from Add → Subset → levels.

If you are using curvilinear coordinates or cartesian coordinates with an origin offset (i.e. the domain's lower corner  $\neq [0, 0, 0]$ ) and/or different grid spacings along different directions, the correct coordinate transformation can be done by applying the Displacement operator. Example:

- Select a valid data.\*.hdf5 database by clicking on Open
- Add → Pseudocolor → rho
- Operators → Transform → Displace
- Click on the Displace operator to set the attributes: Displacement variable → Displacement → Vectors → Displacement.

As an example we show, in Fig. 9.2, a close-up of the final solution obtained with configuration #08 of the Test\_Problems/HD/Disk\_Planet/ problem.

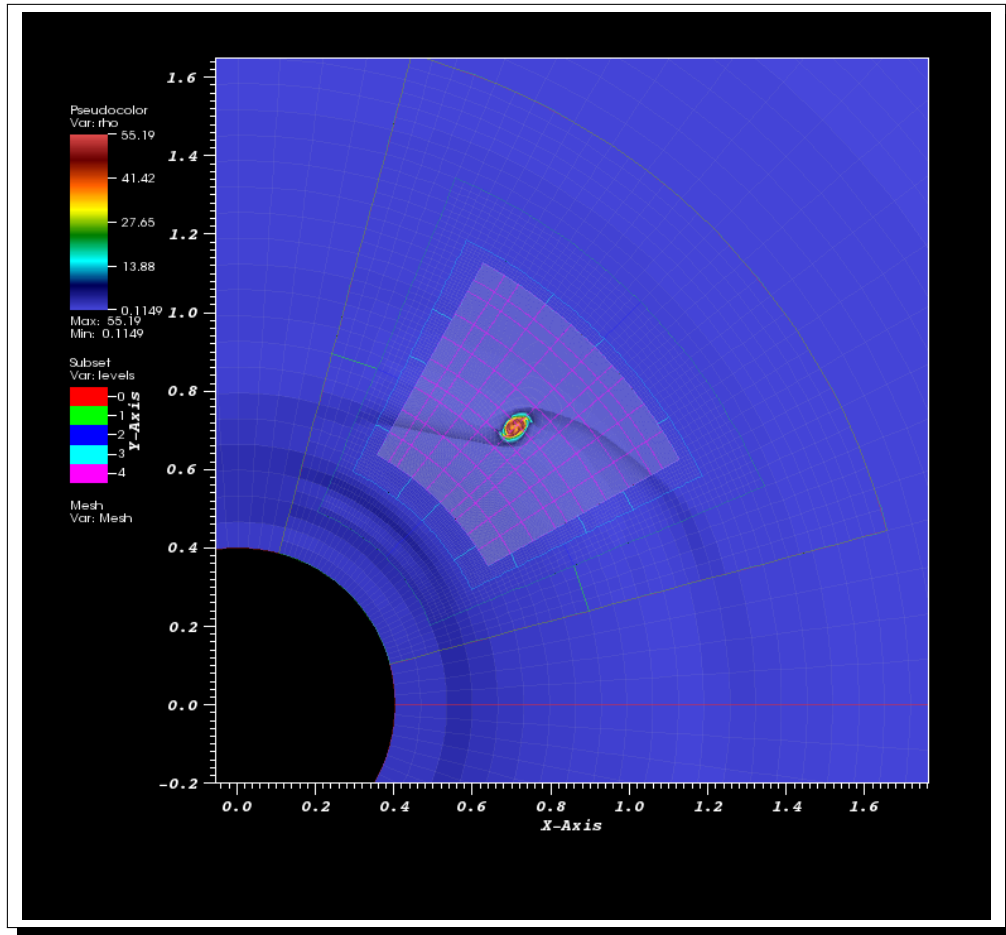


Figure 9.2: Density distribution with overplotted AMR levels for the disk-planet interaction.

### 9.6.3 Visualization with pyPLUTO

The simulation data obtained from **PLUTO-Chombo** is written as a HDF5 file, which can now be visualised and analysed using **pyPLUTO** (§8.3.3). The reader for HDF5 files with AMR data in **pyPLUTO** has been developed by Dr. Antoine Strugarek (Departement of Physics, University of Montreal) and has same capabilities as that of IDL's **HDF5LOAD**. In order to use this reader it is required to install, *h5py* package, the Pythonic interface to HDF5 data.

The syntax you need is similar to that used for static grids. For example, in order to read **data.0001.hdf5** at the equivalent resolution provided by the 4<sup>th</sup> refinement level,

```
> ipython --pylab
In [1]: import pyPLUTO as pp
In [2]: D = pp.pload(1,datatype='hdf5',level=4)
```

Now, the *pyPLUTO* *pload* object, **D** has all information regarding the data. To visualize (say) the density  $\rho$ , one can use the *pyPLUTO*.*Image* class as follows.

```
In [3]: I = pp.Image()
In [4]: I.pldisplay(D, D.rho, x1 = D.x1, x2 = D.x2, cbar=(True,
    'vertical'))
# To plot 2D R-Phi data obtained from a POLAR AMR Grid.
In [5]: I.pldisplay(D, D.rho, x1 = D.x1, x2 = D.x2, cbar=(True,
    'vertical'), polar=[True, True])
# To plot 2D R-Theta Slice from 3D POLAR AMR Data.
In [6]: I.pldisplay(D, D.rho[:, :, D.n3/2], x1 = D.x1, x2 = D.x2, cbar=(True,
    'vertical'), polar=[True, False])
```

Further, AMR levels in form of boxes can be overplotted using the *oplotbox* routine. Here, we plot the boxes for all 4 refine levels in addition to the base coarse grid.

```
In [7]: I.oplotbox(D.AMRLevel, lrange=[0,4],cval=['r','g','k','c','m'],geom=D.geometry)
```

The figure 9.3 shows the total magnetic pressure obtained for the MHD Rotor problem in 2D at the equivalent resolution provided by the 4<sup>th</sup> refinement level, also, overplotted are the AMR levels in different colored lines for all of these 4 levels.

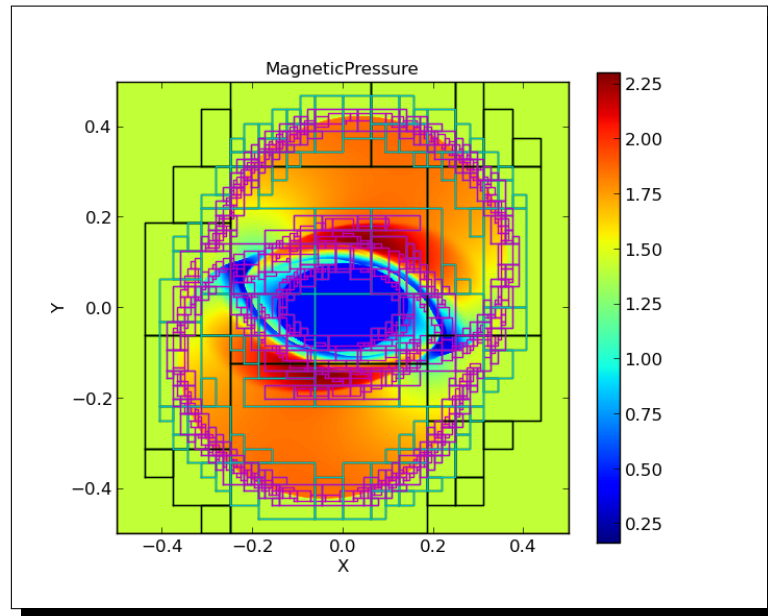


Figure 9.3: AMR Data visualisation using pyPLUTO.

**Note:** : The HDF5 reader is not yet integrated into the **pyPLUTO**'s graphical user interface

---

# A. Equations in Different Geometries

---

In this section we give the explicit form of the MHD and RMHD equations written in different systems of coordinates. Non-ideal terms such as viscosity, resistivity and thermal conduction are not included here. The discretizations used in the Src/MHD/rhs.c and Src/RMHD/rhs.c strictly follow these form. Equations for the non-magnetized version (HD and RHD) are obtained by setting the magnetic field vector  $\mathbf{B} = \mathbf{0}$ .

## A.1 MHD Equations

### A.1.1 Cartesian Coordinates

In Cartesian coordinates  $(x, y, z)$ , the conservative ideal MHD Equations (3.7) are discretized using the following divergence form

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot (\rho \mathbf{v}) &= 0 \\
\frac{\partial m_x}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot (m_x \mathbf{v} - B_x \mathbf{B}) + \frac{\partial p_t}{\partial x} &= \rho \left( g_x - \frac{\partial \Phi}{\partial x} \right) \\
\frac{\partial m_y}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot (m_y \mathbf{v} - B_y \mathbf{B}) + \frac{\partial p_t}{\partial y} &= \rho \left( g_y - \frac{\partial \Phi}{\partial y} \right) \\
\frac{\partial m_z}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot (m_z \mathbf{v} - B_z \mathbf{B}) + \frac{\partial p_t}{\partial z} &= \rho \left( g_z - \frac{\partial \Phi}{\partial z} \right) \\
\frac{\partial}{\partial t} (E + \rho \Phi) + \nabla \cdot \left[ (E + p_t + \rho \Phi) \mathbf{v} - \mathbf{B} (\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{B}) \right] &= \rho \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{g} \\
\frac{\partial B_x}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial \mathcal{E}_z}{\partial y} - \frac{\partial \mathcal{E}_y}{\partial z} &= 0 \\
\frac{\partial B_y}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial \mathcal{E}_x}{\partial z} - \frac{\partial \mathcal{E}_z}{\partial x} &= 0 \\
\frac{\partial B_z}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial \mathcal{E}_y}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial \mathcal{E}_x}{\partial y} &= 0
\end{aligned} \tag{A.1}$$

where  $\mathbf{v} = (v_x, v_y, v_z)$  and  $\mathbf{B} = (B_x, B_y, B_z)$  are the velocity and magnetic field vectors,  $(\mathcal{E}_x, \mathcal{E}_y, \mathcal{E}_z)$  are the components of the electromotive force  $\mathcal{E} = -\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{B}$ ,  $\mathbf{g}$  is the body force vector and  $\Phi$  is the gravitational potential.



### A.1.2 Polar Coordinates

In polar cylindrical coordinates  $(R, \phi, z)$ , the conservative ideal MHD Equations (3.7) are discretized using the following divergence form

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot (\rho \mathbf{v}) &= 0 \\
\frac{\partial m_R}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot (m_R \mathbf{v} - B_R \mathbf{B}) + \frac{\partial p_t}{\partial R} &= \rho \left( g_R - \frac{\partial \Phi}{\partial R} \right) + \frac{\rho v_\phi^2 - B_\phi^2}{R} \\
\frac{\partial m_\phi}{\partial t} + \nabla^R \cdot (m_\phi \mathbf{v} - B_\phi \mathbf{B}) + \frac{1}{R} \frac{\partial p_t}{\partial \phi} &= \rho \left( g_\phi - \frac{1}{R} \frac{\partial \Phi}{\partial \phi} \right) \\
\frac{\partial m_z}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot (m_z \mathbf{v} - B_z \mathbf{B}) + \frac{\partial p_t}{\partial z} &= \rho \left( g_z - \frac{\partial \Phi}{\partial z} \right) \\
\frac{\partial}{\partial t} (E + \rho \Phi) + \nabla \cdot \left[ (E + p_t + \rho \Phi) \mathbf{v} - \mathbf{B} (\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{B}) \right] &= \rho \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{g} \\
\frac{\partial B_R}{\partial t} + \frac{1}{R} \frac{\partial \mathcal{E}_z}{\partial \phi} - \frac{\partial \mathcal{E}_\phi}{\partial z} &= 0 \\
\frac{\partial B_\phi}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial \mathcal{E}_R}{\partial z} - \frac{\partial \mathcal{E}_z}{\partial R} &= 0 \\
\frac{\partial B_z}{\partial t} + \frac{1}{R} \frac{\partial (R \mathcal{E}_\phi)}{\partial R} - \frac{1}{R} \frac{\partial \mathcal{E}_R}{\partial \phi} &= 0,
\end{aligned} \tag{A.2}$$

Note that curvature terms are present in the radial component while the azimuthal component is discretized in angular momentum conserving form. The corresponding divergence operators are

$$\begin{aligned}
\nabla \cdot \mathbf{F} &= \frac{1}{R} \frac{\partial (R F_R)}{\partial R} + \frac{1}{R} \frac{\partial F_\phi}{\partial \phi} + \frac{\partial F_z}{\partial z}, \\
\nabla^R \cdot \mathbf{F} &= \frac{1}{R^2} \frac{\partial (R^2 F_R)}{\partial R} + \frac{1}{R} \frac{\partial F_\phi}{\partial \phi} + \frac{\partial F_z}{\partial z}
\end{aligned} \tag{A.3}$$

In the previous equations  $\mathbf{v} = (v_R, v_\phi, v_z)$  and  $\mathbf{B} = (B_R, B_\phi, B_z)$  are the velocity and magnetic field vectors,  $(\mathcal{E}_R, \mathcal{E}_\phi, \mathcal{E}_z)$  are the components of the electromotive force  $\mathcal{E} = -\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{B}$ ,  $\mathbf{g}$  is the body force vector and  $\Phi$  is the gravitational potential.

### A.1.3 Spherical Coordinates

In spherical coordinates  $(r, \theta, \phi)$  the ideal MHD equations (3.7) are discretized using the following divergence form

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{\partial \rho}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot (\rho \mathbf{v}) &= 0 \\
\frac{\partial m_r}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot (m_r \mathbf{v} - B_r \mathbf{B}) + \frac{\partial p_t}{\partial r} &= \rho \left( g_r - \frac{\partial \Phi}{\partial r} \right) + \frac{\rho v_\theta^2 - B_\theta^2}{r} + \frac{\rho v_\phi^2 - B_\phi^2}{r} \\
\frac{\partial m_\theta}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot (m_\theta \mathbf{v} - B_\theta \mathbf{B}) + \frac{1}{r} \frac{\partial p_t}{\partial \theta} &= \rho \left( g_\theta - \frac{1}{r} \frac{\partial \Phi}{\partial \theta} \right) - \frac{\rho v_\theta v_r - B_\theta B_r}{r} + \cot \theta \frac{\rho v_\phi^2 - B_\phi^2}{r} \\
\frac{\partial m_\phi}{\partial t} + \nabla^r \cdot (m_\phi \mathbf{v} - B_\phi \mathbf{B}) + \frac{1}{r \sin \theta} \frac{\partial p_t}{\partial \phi} &= \rho \left( g_\phi - \frac{1}{r \sin \theta} \frac{\partial \Phi}{\partial \phi} \right) \\
\frac{\partial}{\partial t} (E + \rho \Phi) + \nabla \cdot \left[ (E + p_t + \rho \Phi) \mathbf{v} - \mathbf{B} (\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{B}) \right] &= \rho \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{g} \\
\frac{\partial B_r}{\partial t} + \frac{1}{r \sin \theta} \frac{\partial (\sin \theta \mathcal{E}_\phi)}{\partial \theta} - \frac{1}{r \sin \theta} \frac{\partial \mathcal{E}_\theta}{\partial \phi} &= 0 \\
\frac{\partial B_\theta}{\partial t} + \frac{1}{r \sin \theta} \frac{\partial \mathcal{E}_r}{\partial \phi} - \frac{1}{r} \frac{\partial (r \mathcal{E}_\phi)}{\partial r} &= 0 \\
\frac{\partial B_\phi}{\partial t} + \frac{1}{r} \frac{\partial (r \mathcal{E}_\theta)}{\partial r} - \frac{1}{r} \frac{\partial \mathcal{E}_r}{\partial \theta} &= 0
\end{aligned} \tag{A.4}$$

Note that curvature terms are present in the radial and meridional components while the azimuthal component is discretized in angular momentum conserving form. The corresponding divergence operators are

$$\begin{aligned}
\nabla \cdot \mathbf{F} &= \frac{1}{r^2} \frac{\partial (r^2 F_r)}{\partial r} + \frac{1}{r \sin \theta} \frac{\partial (\sin \theta F_\theta)}{\partial \theta} + \frac{1}{r \sin \theta} \frac{\partial F_\phi}{\partial \phi} \\
\nabla^r \cdot \mathbf{F} &= \frac{1}{r^3} \frac{\partial (r^3 F_r)}{\partial r} + \frac{1}{r \sin^2 \theta} \frac{\partial (\sin^2 \theta F_\theta)}{\partial \theta} + \frac{1}{r \sin \theta} \frac{\partial F_\phi}{\partial \phi}
\end{aligned} \tag{A.5}$$

In the previous equations  $\mathbf{v} = (v_r, v_\theta, v_\phi)$  and  $\mathbf{B} = (B_r, B_\theta, B_\phi)$  are the velocity and magnetic field vectors,  $(\mathcal{E}_r, \mathcal{E}_\theta, \mathcal{E}_\phi)$  are the components of the electromotive force  $\mathcal{E} = -\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{B}$ ,  $\mathbf{g}$  is the body force vector and  $\Phi$  is the gravitational potential.

## A.2 (Special) Relativistic MHD Equations

### A.2.1 Cartesian Coordinates

In Cartesian coordinates  $(x, y, z)$ , the relativistic MHD equations (3.14) take the form

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{\partial D}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot (D\mathbf{v}) &= 0 \\
\frac{\partial m_x}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot [(w + b^2)v_x\mathbf{v} - b_x\mathbf{b}] + \frac{\partial p_t}{\partial x} &= \rho g_x \\
\frac{\partial m_y}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot [(w + b^2)v_y\mathbf{v} - b_y\mathbf{b}] + \frac{\partial p_t}{\partial y} &= \rho g_y \\
\frac{\partial m_z}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot [(w + b^2)v_z\mathbf{v} - b_z\mathbf{b}] + \frac{\partial p_t}{\partial z} &= \rho g_z \\
\frac{\partial E}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot (\mathbf{m} - D\mathbf{v}) &= D\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{g} \\
\frac{\partial B_x}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial \mathcal{E}_z}{\partial y} - \frac{\partial \mathcal{E}_y}{\partial z} &= 0 \\
\frac{\partial B_y}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial \mathcal{E}_x}{\partial z} - \frac{\partial \mathcal{E}_z}{\partial x} &= 0 \\
\frac{\partial B_z}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial \mathcal{E}_y}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial \mathcal{E}_x}{\partial y} &= 0
\end{aligned} \tag{A.6}$$

where  $D = \gamma\rho$  is the lab density,  $\mathbf{m} = (w + b^2)\mathbf{v} - \gamma(\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{B})\mathbf{b}$  is the momentum density,  $w$  is the gas enthalpy,  $b^2 = \mathbf{B}^2/\gamma^2 + (\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{B})^2$ ,  $\mathbf{v} = (v_x, v_y, v_z)$  is the velocity,  $\mathbf{B} = (B_x, B_y, B_z)$  is the magnetic field in the lab frame,  $\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{B}/\gamma + \gamma(\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{B})\mathbf{v}$  is the covariant field,  $(\mathcal{E}_x, \mathcal{E}_y, \mathcal{E}_z)$  are the components of the electromotive force  $\mathcal{E} = -\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{B}$  and  $\mathbf{g}$  is the body force vector.

### A.2.2 Polar Coordinates

In polar cylindrical coordinates  $(R, \phi, z)$ , the RMHD Equations (3.14) are discretized using the following form

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{\partial D}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot (D\mathbf{v}) &= 0 \\
\frac{\partial m_R}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot [(w + b^2)v_R\mathbf{v} - b_R\mathbf{b}] + \frac{\partial p_t}{\partial R} &= \rho g_R + \frac{m_\phi v_\phi}{R} - \left( \frac{B_\phi}{\gamma^2} + (\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{B})v_\phi \right) \frac{B_\phi}{R} \\
\frac{\partial m_\phi}{\partial t} + \nabla^R \cdot [(w + b^2)v_\phi\mathbf{v} - b_\phi\mathbf{b}] + \frac{1}{R} \frac{\partial p_t}{\partial \phi} &= \rho g_\phi \\
\frac{\partial m_z}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot [(w + b^2)v_z\mathbf{v} - b_z\mathbf{b}] + \frac{\partial p_t}{\partial z} &= \rho g_z \\
\frac{\partial E}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot (\mathbf{m} - D\mathbf{v}) &= D\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{g} \\
\frac{\partial B_R}{\partial t} + \frac{1}{R} \frac{\partial \mathcal{E}_z}{\partial \phi} - \frac{\partial \mathcal{E}_\phi}{\partial z} &= 0 \\
\frac{\partial B_\phi}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial \mathcal{E}_R}{\partial z} - \frac{\partial \mathcal{E}_z}{\partial R} &= 0 \\
\frac{\partial B_z}{\partial t} + \frac{1}{R} \frac{\partial (R\mathcal{E}_\phi)}{\partial R} - \frac{1}{R} \frac{\partial \mathcal{E}_R}{\partial \phi} &= 0,
\end{aligned} \tag{A.7}$$

Note that curvature terms are present in the radial component while the azimuthal component is discretized in angular momentum conserving form. The corresponding divergence operators are

$$\begin{aligned}\nabla \cdot \mathbf{F} &= \frac{1}{R} \frac{\partial(RF_R)}{\partial R} + \frac{1}{R} \frac{\partial F_\phi}{\partial \phi} + \frac{\partial F_z}{\partial z}, \\ \nabla^R \cdot \mathbf{F} &= \frac{1}{R^2} \frac{\partial(R^2 F_R)}{\partial R} + \frac{1}{R} \frac{\partial F_\phi}{\partial \phi} + \frac{\partial F_z}{\partial z}\end{aligned}\tag{A.8}$$

In the previous equations  $\mathbf{v} = (v_R, v_\phi, v_z)$  and  $\mathbf{B} = (B_R, B_\phi, B_z)$  are the velocity and magnetic field vectors,  $(\mathcal{E}_R, \mathcal{E}_\phi, \mathcal{E}_z)$  are the components of the electromotive force  $\mathcal{E} = -\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{B}$ ,  $\mathbf{g}$  is the body force vector and  $\Phi$  is the gravitational potential.

### A.2.3 Spherical Coordinates

In spherical coordinates  $(r, \theta, \phi)$  the RMHD equations (3.14) are discretized using the following divergence form

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\partial D}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot (D\mathbf{v}) &= 0 \\ \frac{\partial m_r}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot [(w + b^2)v_r \mathbf{v} - b_r \mathbf{b}] + \frac{\partial p_t}{\partial r} &= \rho g_r + \frac{m_\theta v_\theta + m_\phi v_\phi}{r} + \\ &\quad - \left( \frac{B_\theta}{\gamma^2} + (\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{B})v_\theta \right) \frac{B_\theta}{r} - \left( \frac{B_\phi}{\gamma^2} + (\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{B})v_\phi \right) \frac{B_\phi}{r} \\ \frac{\partial m_\theta}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot [(w + b^2)v_\theta \mathbf{v} - b_\theta \mathbf{b}] + \frac{1}{r} \frac{\partial p_t}{\partial \theta} &= \rho g_\theta - \frac{m_\theta v_r - \cot \theta m_\phi v_\phi}{r} \\ &\quad + \left( \frac{B_\theta}{\gamma^2} + (\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{B})v_\theta \right) \frac{B_r}{r} - \cot \theta \left( \frac{B_\phi}{\gamma^2} + (\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{B})v_\phi \right) \frac{B_\phi}{r} \\ \frac{\partial m_\phi}{\partial t} + \nabla^r \cdot [(w + b^2)v_\phi \mathbf{v} - b_\phi \mathbf{b}] + \frac{1}{r \sin \theta} \frac{\partial p_t}{\partial \phi} &= \rho g_\phi \\ \frac{\partial E}{\partial t} + \nabla \cdot (\mathbf{m} - D\mathbf{v}) &= D\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{g} \\ \frac{\partial B_r}{\partial t} + \frac{1}{r \sin \theta} \frac{\partial(\sin \theta \mathcal{E}_\phi)}{\partial \theta} - \frac{1}{r \sin \theta} \frac{\partial \mathcal{E}_\theta}{\partial \phi} &= 0 \\ \frac{\partial B_\theta}{\partial t} + \frac{1}{r \sin \theta} \frac{\partial \mathcal{E}_r}{\partial \phi} - \frac{1}{r} \frac{\partial(r \mathcal{E}_\phi)}{\partial r} &= 0 \\ \frac{\partial B_\phi}{\partial t} + \frac{1}{r} \frac{\partial(r \mathcal{E}_\theta)}{\partial r} - \frac{1}{r} \frac{\partial \mathcal{E}_r}{\partial \theta} &= 0\end{aligned}\tag{A.9}$$

Note that curvature terms are present in the radial and meridional components while the azimuthal component is discretized in angular momentum conserving form. The corresponding divergence operators are

$$\begin{aligned}\nabla \cdot \mathbf{F} &= \frac{1}{r^2} \frac{\partial(r^2 F_r)}{\partial r} + \frac{1}{r \sin \theta} \frac{\partial(\sin \theta F_\theta)}{\partial \theta} + \frac{1}{r \sin \theta} \frac{\partial F_\phi}{\partial \phi} \\ \nabla^r \cdot \mathbf{F} &= \frac{1}{r^3} \frac{\partial(r^3 F_r)}{\partial r} + \frac{1}{r \sin^2 \theta} \frac{\partial(\sin^2 \theta F_\theta)}{\partial \theta} + \frac{1}{r \sin \theta} \frac{\partial F_\phi}{\partial \phi}\end{aligned}\tag{A.10}$$

---

## B. Predefined Constants and Macros

---

### B.1 Predefined Physical Constants

PLUTO has several predefined physical and astronomical constants in c.g.s. units which may be used anywhere in the code (see macro.h):

```
#define CONST_AH      1.008          /**< Atomic weight of Hydrogen */
#define CONST_AHe     4.004          /**< Atomic weight of Helium */
#define CONST_AZ       30.0          /**< Mean atomic weight of heavy elements */
#define CONST_amu      1.66053886e-24 /**< Atomic mass unit. */
#define CONST_au       1.49597892e13  /**< Astronomical unit. */
#define CONST_c        2.99792458e10  /**< Speed of Light. */
#define CONST_eV       1.602176463158e-12 /**< Electron Volt in erg. */
#define CONST_G        6.6726e-8      /**< Gravitational Constant. */
#define CONST_h        6.62606876e-27 /**< Planck Constant. */
#define CONST_kB       1.3806505e-16  /**< Boltzmann constant. */
#define CONST_ly       0.9461e18      /**< Light year. */
#define CONST_mp       1.67262171e-24 /**< Proton mass. */
#define CONST_mn       1.67492728e-24 /**< Neutron mass. */
#define CONST_me       9.1093826e-28  /**< Electron mass. */
#define CONST_mH       1.6733e-24     /**< Hydrogen atom mass. */
#define CONST_Msun     2.e33          /**< Solar Mass. */
#define CONST_Mearth   5.9736e27      /**< Earth Mass. */
#define CONST_NA       6.0221367e23   /**< Avogadro Contant. */
#define CONST_pc       3.0856775807e18 /**< Parsec. */
#define CONST_PI       3.14159265358979 /**< \f$ \pi \f$. */
#define CONST_Rearth   6.378136e8     /**< Earth Radius. */
#define CONST_Rsun     6.96e10        /**< Solar Radius. */
#define CONST_sigma    5.67051e-5     /**< Stephan Boltmann constant. */
#define CONST_sigmaT   6.6524e-25     /**< Thomson Cross section. */
```

### B.2 Predefined Function-Like Macros

PLUTO comes with a number of pre-defined function-like macros to implement simple arithmetic operations such as maximum (**MAX**), minimum (**MIN**), or looping over a specific portion of the computational domain (e.g. **DOM\_LOOP** or **TOT\_LOOP**). Please refer to the Doc/Doxygen/html/macros.8h.html page in the API refernece guide (Doc/Doxygen/html/index.html).

### B.3 Fine Tuning Constants

As shown in §2.1.11, **PLUTO** allows a number of switches to be fine-tuned directly from the Python menu without having to copy source files to the local working area. This section is new to **PLUTO** 4.1. Table B.1 gives a list of them.

Table B.1: Fine-tuning symbolic constant names that can be modified via the Python script using `USER_DEF_CONSTANTS`.

Name	Value	Description
CH_TRACING_REF_STATE	(1, 2, 3)	Change the reference state used during the characteristic tracing step (see <code>Src/States/char.tracing.c</code> ). Set it to 1, 2 or 3 to use cell-centered value (1), interpolated states (2) or fastest wave (3, standard prescription).
CHOMBO_CONS_AM	(YES/NO)	In curvilinear coordinates, set this switch to <i>YES</i> to enforce angular momentum conservation during the prolongation and restriction operation with <b>PLUTO-Chombo</b> . Default value is <i>YES</i> when <code>CHOMBO_EN_SWITCH</code> is set to <i>YES</i> .
EGLM	(YES/NO)	Enable the (E)xtented GLM form of the MHD equations, see §3.2.4.2. Default value is <i>NO</i> .
EPS_PSHOCK_ENTROPY	(double)	Sets the maximum shock strength above which fluid variables inside a given computational zone can be safely updated using the entropy equation (see <code>Src/flag.shock.c</code> ). It has effect only when <code>ENTROPY_SWITCH</code> is set to <i>YES</i> . A lower value will trigger the flattening procedure in more zones. Default is 0.05.
EPS_PSHOCK_FLATTEN	(double)	Sets the minimum shock strength above which the <code>MULTID</code> shock flattening algorithm flags a zone to be inside a shock (see <code>Src/flag.shock.c</code> ). It has effect only when <code>SHOCK_FLATTENING</code> is set to <i>MULTID</i> . A lower value will trigger the flattening procedure in more zones. Default is 5.0.
FARGO_AVERAGE_VELOCITY	(YES/NO)	Set this to <i>YES</i> if the FARGO orbital velocity $w$ should be computed by averaging the azimuthal velocity every fixed number of steps. When set to <i>NO</i> , $w$ is computed from the <code>FARGO.SetVelocity()</code> function. Default is <i>NO</i> , or <i>YES</i> if FARGO is used with the shearing box module.
FARGO_NSTEP_AVERAGE	(int)	Sets how often the orbital velocity should be recomputed in the FARGO transport step. Default is 10.
FARGO_ORDER	(int)	Sets the order of integration used by the FARGO algorithm during the linear transport step. Possible values are 2 and 3. Default is 3.
PV_TEMPERATURE_TABLE	(YES/NO)	Used for the <code>PVTE_LAW</code> EOS in ionization equilibrium, §4.3.2. When set to <i>YES</i> replaces function evaluations of the thermal EOS ( $p = nk_B T$ ) and its inverse with lookup table and bilinear interpolation. This results in a considerably faster execution. Default is <i>YES</i> .
PV_TEMPERATURE_TABLE_NX	(int)	Sets the number of $x$ -points used to construct the temperature table for the <code>PVTE_LAW</code> EOS. The default value is set in <code>Src/EOS/PVTE/thermal.eos.c</code> .
PV_TEMPERATURE_TABLE_NY	(int)	Sets the number of $y$ -points used to construct the temperature table for the <code>PVTE_LAW</code> EOS. The default value is set in <code>Src/EOS/PVTE/thermal.eos.c</code> .
SB_SYMMERIZE_HYDRO	(YES/NO)	(Shearing box module only, §7.1). Symmetrize the hydrodynamical fluxes at the left and right $x$ -boundaries in order to enforce conservation of hydrodynamic variables like density, momentum and energy (no magnetic field). Default is <i>YES</i> .

*Continued on next page*

Table B.1 – Continued from previous page

Name	Value	Description
SB_SYMMERIZE_EY	(YES/NO)	(Shearing box module only, §7.1). Symmetrize the y-component of the electric field at the left and right x-boundaries to enforce conservation of magnetic field (only in 3D, see Src/MHD/Shearing_Box/sb_fluxes.c). Default value is YES.
SB_SYMMERIZE_EZ	(YES/NO)	(Shearing box module only, §7.1). Symmetrize the z-component of electric field at the left and right x-boundaries to enforce conservation of magnetic field. Default is YES.
STS_nu	(double)	Sets the value of the $\nu$ parameter used to control the efficiency of Super-Time-Stepping integration for parabolic (diffusion) terms, see chapter 5 and §5.4.2. If not set, the default value is 0.01.
T_CUT_RHOE	(double)	Sets the cut-off temperature (in K) used in the <i>PVTE_LAW</i> equation of state (§4.3). Zones with temperature below <i>T_CUT_RHOE</i> will be reset to this value and the internal energy will be redefined accordingly. Default value is 10 K.
TV_ENERGY_TABLE	(YES/NO)	Used for the <i>PVTE_LAW</i> EOS in ionization equilibrium, §4.3.2. When set to YES replaces function evaluations of the caloric EOS (internal energy) and its inverse ( $e(T, \rho)$ and $T(e, \rho)$ ) with lookup table and bilinear interpolation. This results in a considerably faster execution. Default is YES.
TV_ENERGY_TABLE_NX	(int)	Sets the number of $x$ -points used to construct the temperature table for the <i>PVTE_LAW</i> EOS. Default value is set in Src/EOS/PVTE/internal.energy.c.
TV_ENERGY_TABLE_NY	(int)	Sets the number of $y$ -points used to construct the temperature table for the <i>PVTE_LAW</i> EOS. Default value is set in Src/EOS/PVTE/internal.energy.c.
UNIT_DENSITY	(double)	Sets the unit density in $\text{gr}/\text{cm}^3$ . Default value is the proton mass per $\text{cm}^3$ .
UNIT_LENGTH	(double)	Sets the unit length in cm. Default value is 1 astronomical unit.
UNIT_VELOCITY	(double)	Sets the unit velocity in $\text{cm}/\text{sec}$ . Default value is 1 $\text{Km}/\text{sec}$ .
VTK_VECTOR_DUMP	(YES/NO)	Enable writing of vector fields (velocity and magnetic field) during VTK output. Default value is NO (all variables are written with the scalar attribute).

# Bibliography

- [1] Abel T., Anninos P., Zhang Y., Norman M. L., 1997, *New Astron.*, 2, 181
- [2] Alexiades, V., Amiez, A., & Gremaud E.-A. 1996, *Com. Num. Meth. Eng.*, 12, 31
- [3] Balbus, S. A. 1986, *ApJ*, 304, 787
- [4] Balsara, D. S. & Spicer, S. D. 1999, *J. Comput. Phys.*, 149, 270
- [5] Balsara, D. S., Tilley, D. A., & Howk, J. C. 2008, *MNRAS*, 386, 627
- [6] Beckers, J.M. 1992, *SIAM J. Numer. Anal.* 29, 701-713
- [7] Borges R., Carmona M., Costa B., Don W.S. 2008, *J. Comput. Phys.* 227 3191-3211.
- [8] Cen, R., 1992, *ApJ Supp.*, 78, 341
- [9] Cada P.& Torrilhon M. 2009, *J. Comput. Phys.* 228, 4118.
- [10] Colella, P. & Woodward, P. R. 1984, *J. Comput. Phys.*, 54, 174
- [11] Colella, P. 1985, *SIAM J. Sci. Stat. Comput.* 6, 104-117.
- [12] Colella, P. 1990, *J. Comput. Phys.*, 87, 171
- [13] Cowie, L. L. & McKee, C. F. 1977, *APJ*, 211, 135
- [14] Courant, R., Friedrichs, K. O. & Lewy, H. 1928, *Math. Ann.*, 100, 32
- [15] Dedner, A., Kemm, F., Kröner, D., Munz, C.-D., Schnitzer T., and Wesenberg, M. 2002, *J. Comput. Phys.*, 175, 645
- [16] Galli D., Palla F., 1998, *A&A*, 335, 403
- [17] Gardiner, T. A., & Stone, J. M. 2005, *J. Comp. Phys.*, 205, 509
- [18] Harten A., Engquist B., Osher S., Chakravarthy S. 1987, *J. Comput. Phys.* 71, 231
- [19] Hollenbach D., McKee C. F., 1979, *ApJ Supp.*, 41, 555
- [20] Jiang, G. & Shu, C.-W. 1996, *J. Comput. Phys.* 126, 202
- [21] Jiang, G. & Wu, C.-C. 1999, *J. Comput. Phys.* 150, 561
- [22] Landau, L. D., & Lifshitz, E. M. 1987, *Fluid Mechanics*, 2nd edition, Pergamon Press, Oxford .
- [23] Liou, M.-S. 1996, *J. Comp. Phys.*, 129, 364
- [24] Londrillo, P., & Del Zanna, L., 2004, *J. Comp. Phys.*, **195**, 17
- [25] Löhner, R. 1987, *Computer Methods in Applied Mechanics and Engineering*, **61**, 323
- [26] Kley, W. 1998, *A&A*, 338, L37
- [27] Masset, F. 2000, *A&A*, 141, 165
- [28] Martí, J. M. & Müller, E. 1996, *J. Comput. Phys.*, 123, 1
- [29] Mignone, A., & Bodo, G. 2005, *MNRAS*, 364, 126
- [30] Mignone, A., Plewa, T., & Bodo, G. 2005, *Astrophysical Journal Supplement*, 160, 199
- [31] Mignone, A. 2007, *J. Comp. Phys.*,
- [32] Mignone, A., Bodo, G., Massaglia, S., Matsakos, T., Tesileanu, O., Zanni, C., & Ferrari, A. 2007, *Astrophysical Journal Supplement*, 170, 228
- [33] Mignone, A., Zanni, C., Tzeferacos, P., van Straalen, B., Colella, P., and Bodo, G., 2012, *Astrophysical Journal Supplement*, 198, 7
- [34] Mignone, A., Flock, M., Stute, M., Kolb, S. M., & Muscianisi, G. 2012, *A&A*, 545, A152



- [35] Mignone, A., & McKinney, J. C. 2007, MNRAS, 378, 1118
- [36] Mignone, A., Ugliano, M., & Bodo, G. 2009, MNRAS, 393, 1141
- [37] Mignone, A., & Tzeferacos, P. 2010, Journal of Computational Physics, 229, 2117
- [38] Mignone, A., Tzeferacos, P., Bodo, G. 2010, Journal of Computational Physics, 229, 5896
- [39] Mignone, 2014, Journal of Computational Physics, 270, 784
- [40] Miyoshi, T., & Kusano, K. 2005, Journal of Computational Physics, 208, 315
- [41] Orlando, S., Bocchino, F., Reale, F., Peres, G., & Pagano, P. 2008, ApJ, 678, 274
- [42] Kenneth G. Powell, NASA CR-194902 ICASE Report No. 94-24, April 1994, pp. 15.
- [43] Liu X.-D., Osher S., Chan T. 1994, J. Comput. Phys. 115, 200
- [44] Powell, K. G., Roe, P.L., Linde, T., Gombosi, T.I. & De Zeeuw, D.L 1999, Journal of Computational Physics, 154,284
- [45] P. L. Roe. 1981, Journal of Computational Physics, 43:357-372.
- [46] Rossi, P. and Bodo, G. and Massaglia, S. & Ferrari, A., 1997, A&A, 321, 672-684.
- [47] Saltzman, J. 1994, J. Comp. Phys., 115, 153
- [48] Shu C.-W., Osher S. 1989, J. Comput. Phys. 83, 32
- [49] Spitzer, L. 1962, Physics of fully ionized gases (New York: Interscience, 1962)
- [50] Strang, G., 1968, SIAM J. Num. Anal., 5, 506
- [51] Suresh A., Huynh H.T., 1997, J. Comput. Phys. 136, 83-99
- [52] Synge, J. L. 1957, The relativistic Gas, North-Holland Publishing Company
- [53] Taub, A. H. 1948, Physical Review, 74, 328
- [54] Teşileanu, O., Mignone, A., & Massaglia, S. 2008, A & A, 488, 429
- [55] Toro, E. F. 1997, Riemann Solvers and Numerical Methods for Fluid Dynamics, Springer-Verlag, Berlin
- [56] B. van Leer 1979, J. Comput. Phys. 32, 101-136
- [57] Woodall J., Agúndez M., Markwick-Kemper A. J., Millar T. J., 2007, A&A, 466, 1197
- [58] Yamaleev, N.K. & Carpenter, M.H. 2009, J. Comput. Phys. 228, 3025-3047
- [59] L. Del Zanna & N. Bucciantini 2002, A & A, 390, 1177
- [60] Del Zanna, L., Bucciantini, N., & Londrillo, P. 2003, Astronomy & Astrophysics, 400, 397